**MODULE 1**

PERSONAL PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS,

AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

(Đại từ nhân xưng, đại từ sỏ'hữu, và đại từ phản thân)

MỤC LỤC

[(Đạitừ nhân xưng, đại từ sỏ hữu, và đại từ phản thân) 2](#_Toc456341149)

[I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Đại từ nhân xiAig) 2](#_Toc456341150)

[II. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (Tính tùrsảr hữu và đại từsỏhũu) 3](#_Toc456341151)

[III. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (Dại từ phản thân) 3](#_Toc456341152)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 4](#_Toc456341153)

[Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence. 4](#_Toc456341154)

[MODULE 2 7](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341155)

[I. COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (Danh từdếm *được* và danh tìrkhống đếm *được)* 7](#_Toc456341156)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 9](#_Toc456341157)

[I. COMPOUND NOUNS (Danh từ ghép) 12](#_Toc456341158)

[II. GENITIVE / POSSESSIVE CASE (Sử hữu cách) 12](#_Toc456341159)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 14](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341160)

[Choose af bf c, or d that best completes the sentence, 14](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341161)

[, or d that best completes the sentence. 14](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341162)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 20](#_Toc456341163)

[Choose ay b, c, or d that best completes the sentence. 20](#_Toc456341164)

[MODULE 5 23](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341165)

[PREPOSITIONS *(Giới từ)* 23](#_Toc456341166)

[II. Giới từ theo sau danh từ, tính từ và động từ (Prepositions following nouns, adjectives, and verbs) 25](#_Toc456341167)

[Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence. 27](#_Toc456341168)

[MODULE 6] 31](#_Toc456341169)

[PHRASAL VERBS *(Cụm động* 31](#_Toc456341170)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 33](#_Toc456341171)

[Choose a, b, c, or d that has the closest meaning to the underlined part. 34](#_Toc456341172)

[MODULE 7 36](#_Toc456341173)

[CONJUNCTIONS *(Liên từ)* 36](#_Toc456341174)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 38](#_Toc456341175)

[Choose ay b, c, or d that best completes the sentence. 38](#_Toc456341176)

[MODULE 8 40](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341177)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 43](#_Toc456341178)

[Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence. 43](#_Toc456341179)

[MODULE 9 46](#_Toc456341180)

[TENSES *(Thì)* 46](#_Toc456341181)

[1. Simple present (Hiện tại đơn) 46](#_Toc456341182)

[2. Present continuous (Hiện tại tiếp diễn) 47](#_Toc456341183)

[6. Past continuous (Quá khứ tiếp diễn) 50](#_Toc456341184)

[7. Past perfect (Quá khứ hoàn thành) 51](#_Toc456341185)

[8. Past perfect continuous (Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn) 52](#_Toc456341186)

[9. Simple Future (Tương lai dơn) 52](#_Toc456341187)

[10. Future continuous (Tương lai tiếp diễn) 53](#_Toc456341188)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 55](#_Toc456341189)

[Choose ay bf c, or d that best completes the sentence. 55](#_Toc456341190)

[MODULE 10 60](#_Toc456341191)

[MODAL VERBS *(Động* 60](#_Toc456341192)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 63](#_Toc456341193)

[Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence. 63](#_Toc456341194)

[MODULE 11) 64](#_Toc456341195)

[CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - WISH and IF ONLY 64](#_Toc456341196)

[I. CÂU ĐIỂU KIỆN (CONDITIONAL SENTENCES) 64](#_Toc456341197)

[,0 . 64](#_Toc456341198)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](#_Toc456341199)

[MODULE 12] 64](#_Toc456341200)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341201)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](#_Toc456341202)

[GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES (Danh động từ và động từ nguyên mẫu) 64](#_Toc456341203)

[MODULE 15 64](#_Toc456341204)

[MODULE 16 64](#_Toc456341205)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](#_Toc456341206)

[MODULE 17 64](#_Toc456341207)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](#_Toc456341208)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](#_Toc456341209)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](#_Toc456341210)

[MODULE 20 64](#_Toc456341211)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](#_Toc456341212)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](#_Toc456341213)

[MULTIPLE CHOICE 64](#_Toc456341214)

[PRACTICE TEST 1 64](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341215)

[PRACTICE TEST 2 64](#_Toc456341216)

[PRACTICE TEST 3 64](#_Toc456341217)

[PRACTICE TEST 5 64](#_Toc456341218)

[PRACTICE TEST 6 64](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341219)

[PRACTICE TEST 7 64](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341220)

[PRACTICE TEST 8 64](file:///C:\Users\Administrator.73245BWJVS32CF1\Documents\file%20word%20gui%20anh%20phuc-lam%20muc%20luc\837.%20NGU%20PHAP%20TIENG%20ANH.docx#_Toc456341221)

[PRACTICE TEST 9 64](#_Toc456341222)

[PRACTICE TEST 10 64](#_Toc456341223)

[PRACTICE TEST n 64](#_Toc456341224)

[PRACTICE TEST 12 64](#_Toc456341225)

**I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Dại từ nhân xưng)**

Đại từ Nhân xưng được dùng chỉ người, nhóm người, vật, hay nhóm vật cụ thể; hoặc được dùng để thay thế cho danh từ đã được đề cập khi khồng cần thiết lập lại. Đại từ nhân xưng được chia làm hai loại: Đại từ nhân xưng chu ngừ (Subjective personal pronouns) và Đại từ nhân xưng tân ngữ (Objective personal pronouns).

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| NGÔI . | SỐ ÍT (SINGULAR) | | | số NHIỂU (PLURAL) | | |
| (PERSON) | Chủ ngữ | Tân ngừ | Nghĩa | Chủ ngừ | Tân ngữ | Nghĩa |
| Thứ I | I | me | tôi | We | us | chủng tôi |
| Thứ II | You | you | bạn | You | you | các bạn |
| Thứ III | He | him | anh ấy | They | them | họ Ị chúng |
|  | She | her | chị ấy |  |  |  |
|  | It | it | nó |  |  |  |

* Đại từ nhân xưng chủ ngừ được dùng làm chủ ngữ của động từ.

Ví du: I am an accountant. (Tôi là kế toán.)

* Đại từ nhân xưng tân ngừ được dùng làm tân ngừ trực tiếp hoặc gián tiếp của động từ hoặc của giới từ.

Ví du: Mary gave me a dictionary, and I like it very much.

(Mary tặng tôi một quyển từ điển, và tôi thích nó lắm.)

We are bored up with him. (Chúng tôi chán anh ta lắm rồỉ.)

• Một số cách dùng của **It**

1. It được dùng làm chủ ngữ giả (formal subject) hoặc tân ngữ giả (formal object)

Ví du: It is necessary to learn English. (Học tiếng Anh là cần thiết)

[= Learning English is necessary.]

I found it impossible to understand that problem.

(Tôi thấy không thể hiểu được vấn đề đó.)

1. It được dùng đế chỉ vật, con vật hoặc người khi không cần đề cập đến giới tính.

Ví du: Look at that house. It is so magnificent.

(Nhìn ngôi nhà kia xem. Nó thật tráng lệ.)

Who’s that? - It is Peter. (Ai đó? - Đó là Peter.)

1. It được dùng làm chủ ngữ giả khi nói về thời gian, thời tiết, nhiệt độ, khoảng cách, hay số đo.

MODULE I 6

**MODULE 1**

PERSONAL PRONOUNS, POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS,

AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

(Đạitừ nhân xưng, đại từ sỏ hữu, và đại từ phản thân)

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (Đại từ nhân xiAig)

Đại từ Nhân xưng được dùng chỉ người, nhóm người, vật, hay nhóm vật cụ thể; hoặc được dùng đế thay thế cho danh từ đà được đề cập khi không cần thiết lập lại. Đại từ nhân xưng được chia làm hai loại: Đại từ nhân xưng chủ ngừ (Subjective personal pronouns) và Đại từ nhân xưng tân ngữ (Objective personal pronouns).

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| NGÔI | SỐ ÍT (SINGULAR) | | | số NHIỀU (PLURAL) | | |
| (PERSON) | Chủ ngữ | Tân ngữ | Nghĩa | Chủ ngừ | Tân ngữ | Nghĩa |
| Thứ I | I | me | tôi | We | us | chúng tôi |
| Thứ II | You | you | bạn | You | you | các bạn |
| Thứ III | He | him | anh ấy | They | them | họ Ị chúng |
|  | She | her | chị ấy |  |  |  |
|  | It | it | nổ |  |  |  |

* Đại từ nhân xưng chủ ngừ được dùng làm chủ ngừ của động từ.

Ví du: I am an accountant. (Tôi là kế toán.)

* Đại từ nhân xưng tân ngữ được dùng làm tân ngừ trực tiếp hoặc gián tiếp của động từ hoặc của giới từ.

Ví du: Mary gave me a dictionary, and I like it very much.

(Mary tặng tôi một quyển từ điển, và tôi thích nó lẩm.)

We are bored up with him. (Chúng tôi chán anh ta lắm rồi.)

• Một số cách dùng của It

1. It được dùng làm chủ ngữ giả (formal subject) hoặc tân ngữ giả (formal object)

Ví du: It is necessary to learn English. (Học tiếng Anh là cần thiết)

[= Learning English is necessary.]

I found it impossible to understand that problem.

(Tôi thấy khống thể hiểu được vấn đề đó.)

1. It được dùng đế chỉ vật, con vật hoặc người khi không cần đề cập đến giới tính.

Ví du: Look at that house. It is so magnificent.

(Nhìn ngôi nhà kia xem. Nó thật tráng lệ.)

Who’s that? - It is Peter. (Ai đó? - Đó là Peter.)

1. It được dùng làm chủ ngữ giả khi nói về thời gian, thời tiết, nhiệt độ, khoảng cách, hay số đo.

MODULE 1 5

Ví du: It is often sunny in the dry season. (Trời thường nắng vào mùa khô.) It is 4 o’clock. (Bây giờ là 4 giờ)

How far is it from here to the bus stop? - It is two kilometers. (Từ đáy đến trạm xe buýt bao xa? - 2 kilômét.)

1. It được dùng để nói về một sự việc, một tình huống đã được đề cập.

Ví du: He failed again. It made him so disappointed.

(Anh ấy lại thất bại. Điều này làm anh ấy rất thất vọng.)

He cheated me. I will never forget it.

(Anh ta lừa tôi. Tôi sẽ không bao giờ quên điều đó.)

1. It được dùng với động từ to be để nhấn mạnh cho một từ hoặc cụm từ. Ví du: It was Tom and Mary that helped us to complete the work.

(Chính Tom và Mary đã giúp chúng tôi hoàn thành công việc.)

II. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS (Tính tùrsảr hữu và đại từsỏhũu)

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Đại từ nhân xưng | Tính từ sở hừu | Đại từ sở hừu | Nghĩa |
| I | my | mine | của tôi |
| You | your | yours | của bạn Ị các bạn |
| He | his | his | của anh ấy |
| She | her | her | của chị ấy |
| It | its | X | của nó |
| We | our | ours | của chúng tôi |
| They | their | theirs | của họ / chúng |

\* It không có dạng đại từ sở hừu.

* Tính từ sở hữu được dùng trước danh từ để chỉ danh từ đó thuộc về người nào, vật nào.

Ví du: That is my house. (Đây là nhà của tôi.)

The dog has just had its breakfast.

(Con chó vừa ăn xong bữa sáng của nó.)

* Đại từ sở hừu không đứng trước danh từ. Đại từ sở hừu được dùng để thay thế cho tính từ sở hừu và danh từ đứng sau.

Ví du: Can I borrow your cell phone? I have left mine (= my cell phone) at home. (Tôi mượn điện thoại di động của bạn dược không? Tôi bỏ qụên điện thọai của tôi ở nhà.)

* Đại từ sở hữu theo sau of trong sở hữu kép (double possessive)

Ví du: This is a picture of theirs. (Đây là một trong những tấm ảnh của họ.) [= This is one of their pictures.]

III. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (Dại từ phản thân)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Đại từ nhân xưng | Đại từ phản thân | Nghĩa |
| I | myself | tự í chính tôi |
| You | yourself | tự / chính bạn |
| He | himself | tự / chính anh ấy |
| She | herself | tự I chính chị ấy |

* Đại từ phản thân được dùng làm tân ngữ (object) khi chủ ngữ và tần ngữ của câu chỉ cùng một đối tượng.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| It | itself | tự / chính nó |
| We | ourselves | tự I chính chúng tối |
| you | yourselves | tự / chính các bạn |
| They | themselves | tự / chính họ í chúng |

Ví du: The gunman killed him as soon as he came in. (Tên cướp giết chết  
anh ta ngay khi anh ta bước vào.) [him = another person]

The gunman killed himself as soon as he came in.(Tên cướp tự sát ngay khi anh ta bước vào.) [himself = the gunman]

* Đại từ' phản thân còn được dùng ngay sau đại từ nhân xưng hoặc danh từ để nhấn mạnh - trong trường hợp này đại từ phản thân được gọi là đại từ nhấn mạnh (Emphatic pronouns).

Ví du: I myself saw him break into the house.

(Chính tôi thấy hẳn dột nhập vào nhà.)

The customer wanted to talk to the manager himself.

(Người khách hàng muốn nói chuyện với chính giám đốc.)

* BY + Đại từ phản thân = alone, without any help

Ví du: John did all things by himself (= without any help).

(Một mình John làm hết mọi việc.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. What are doing? - am doing homework.

a. you III my b. your / Myself /I c. yourself III mine d. yours / Mine / me

1. ideas are different from , but I am sure are still good friends.

a. You / my / our b. Yours / I / us c. Your / mine / we d. Yourself / my / we

1. I cannot lend you laptop. I need it .

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | a. my / myself | b. mine / me c. myself / me | d. me / my |
| 4. | Although we are best friends, mv ideas are different from | | |
|  | a. he | b. his c. him | d. himself |
| 5. | She is not as clever as expect. | |  |
|  | a. we | b. our c. ours | d. us |
| 6. | The girl looked at | in the mirror and smiled. |  |
|  | a. she | b. herself c. hers | d. she’s |
| 7. | Sometimes | feel envious of what have. |  |
|  | a. we / they | b. we / them c. our / their | d. us / they |
| 8. | Your new dress looks the same as | |  |
|  | a. I | b. my c. mine | d. myself |
| 9. | - Who helped | with the work? |  |
|  | - They did it |  |  |
|  | a. their / they | b. they / them c. they / theirs | d. them / themselves |

MODULE 1 f

1. The dog often waves tail whenever Bob comes home.

a. it b. it’s c. itself d. its

1. I am as tall as is.

a. he b. him c. his d. himself

1. Everyone has own responsibility.

a. my b. your c. his d. its

1. Those children show special interest in painting.

a. its <b. their c. his d. our

1. AIDS is dangerous. has not been able to be cured up to the present time.

a. They b. It c. Themselves d. Its

1. Several animals are in danger of extinction. We should find ways to protect .

a. us b. them c. ourselves d. themselves

1. I think your son is old enough to go to school by .

a. he b. his c. him d. himself

1. He bought that car 5 years ago but still looks new.
2. The English understand each other, but I do not understand .

|  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| a. it | b. itself | c. he | d. | himself |
| 18. Marv is indeoendent. She likes doing things on | | | own. | |
| a. she | b. her | c. herself | d. | hers |
| 19. Mv house is smaller than | |  |  |  |
| a. Peter | b. he | c. him | d. | Peter’s |
| 20. Each nation has | own language. | |  |  |
| a. it | b. itself | c. its | d. | it’s |
| 21. Johnny’s got the apartment to | | next week. |  |  |
| a. his | b. he | c. him | d. | himself |
| 22. Mary can teach | to use a computer. | |  |  |
| a. herself | b. she | c. hers | d. | she’s |

a. they b. he c. them d. him

1. Each of will have to be on duty one day a month.

a. we b. us c. our d. ourselves

1. Mumps is usually caught by children. causes a mild fever and

painful swelling of the glands in the neck.

a. It b. They c. He d. She

1. My name is John. What is ?

a. yourselves ‘ b. your c. yours d. yourself

1. On the night of 14 Ap“ril 1912, during \_\_\_\_\_ first voyage, the Titanic hit an iceberg and sank two hours and forty minutes later.

a. his b. her c. their d. our

1. My grandmother left Jane and . ■ her farm.

a. I b. mine c. my d. me

1. His knowledge of foreign languages is wide. helps him a lot in his work.

a. You b. They c. It d. He

1. Peter earns more money than do.

a. I b. me c. myself d. mine

31. Nobody in the neighborhood, not even a. he b. him

, expected that a riot would break out.

c. his d. he’s

32. The only students in the classroom this morning were John and

I b. me

1. I don’t want anybody but

a. she b. her

1. I really don’t appreciate .

a. you b. your

35.

The principal made Tom and . a. I b. my

c. my d. mine

to work on this project.

c. hers d. she’s

walking late into class every morning.

c. yours d. yourself

repair the damage to the auditorium wall, c. me d. mine

36.

Josie, Mary, and a. he

rode their bikes all the way to New Hampshire.

b. him c. his

1. Who else could have taken it other than

a. he b. him c. his

1. Most teenagers long for the day when

cense and the freedom that comes with

a. they / them b. it / them c. it / they

1. Where can we meet? - up to you.

a. It’s b. It c. Its

1. I will try best to help .

d. he’s

?

d. he’s

will get their driving li- d. they / it d. Itself

a. mine / your b. my / you

1. My wife has become crippled by arthritis

doctor about .

a. them b. it c. her

1. Education gets everywhere these days, doesn’t

a. they b. them c. its

1. There are some bottles of wine on the shelf.

a. He is b. You are c. They are

1. We are not sure who is driving, but it might be \_

a. she b. her c. hers

1. They collected the evidence all by .

a. they b. their c. theirs

c. me / yours d. I / you

She is embarrassed to ask the

d. his

?

d. it

for the party tomorrow, d. It is

d. herself

d. themselves

unrecognizable.

c. it is d. they are

1. There were marks on the snow but

a. it was b. they were

1. I am not good at mathematics. difficult.

a. I am b. It is c. They are

1. - Did you consider taking part in volunteer programs?

- Yes, I have thought about .

a. it b. you c. them

1. Let’s go to her party. is rude to turn down \_\_

a. She / mine b. He / its c. It / her

1. One of the local people told her daughter to write

for help.

a. ourselves / we b. we / ours c. our / US

d. He is

myself \_ invitation.

d. She / my \_ a letter to thank

d. us / our

MODULE I B

**COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS, QUANTIFIERS** (Danh từ đếm được và danh từ không đếm được, từ chỉ sô'lượng)

**MODULE 2**

**I. COUNTABLE AND UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS (Danh từdếm được** **và danh tìrkhống** đếm **được)**

1. Danh từ đếm được (countable nouns) là danh từ chỉ người, vật, ý niệm, ... riêng lẻ có thể đếm được.

Danh từ đếm được có hai hình thức: số ít và số nhiều. Ta có thể dùng mạo từ a/ an trước danh từ đếm được số ít và các con số hoặc some, any, many, few trước danh từ đếm được số nhiều.

Ví du: a box (một cái hộp) three boxes (ha cái hộp)

an elephant (một con voi) many elephants (nhiều con voi)

• Cách thành lập danh từ số nhiều

1. Thêm s vào danh từ số ít.

Ví du: book books pencil -> pencils

1. Thêm ES sau danh từ số ít tận cùng là s, ss, SH, CH, X, z, zz.

Ví du: bus -> buses dish -> dishes

watch -» watches fox -> foxes

quiz -» quizzes buzz -\* buzzes

1. Thêm s hoặc ES sau danh từ số ít tận cùng là o.

* Thêm s nếu trước o là một nguyên âm (a, e, i, 0, u), các từ vay mượn của nước ngoài hoặc các từ viết tắt.

Ví du: radio radios

micro (= microcomputer) -> micros

* Thêm ES nếu trước 0 là một phụ âm.

Ví du: potato -> potatoes hero -> heroes

* Một số danh từ có thể có hai hình thức số nhiều.

Ví du: buffalo -» buffalos, buffaloes

1. Thêm s hoặc ES sau danh từ số ít tận cùng là Y.

* Thêm s nếu trước Y là một nguyên âm.

Ví du: play -> £lays boy -» boys

* Y -» IES nếu trước Y là một phụ âm.

Ví du: lorry -> lorries supply -> supplies

1. Một số danh từ số ít tận cùng là F/ FE (calf, half, knife, leaf, life, loaf, self, chef, thief, wife, wolf, sheaf) về số nhiều sẽ thành VES.

Ví du: leaf leaves thief -» thieves

* Thêm s vào các danh từ tận cùng bằng F/ FE khác.

Ví du: belief -> beliefs café -» cafes

* Một số danh từ có hai hình thức số nhiều.

Ví du: dwarf -> dwarfs, dwarves

f. Một số danh từ có hình thức số nhiều bât qui tắc.

Ví du: child -> children foot -> feet

goose -> geese ox oxen

man —> men mouse -» mice

tooth -> teeth woman -» women

sheep —> sheep deer -> deer

Danh từ không đếm dược (uncountable nouns) là danh từ chỉ những khái niệm trừu tượng, chất liệu, chất lỏng, hoặc một tổng thể.

Danh từ không đếm được không có hình thức số nhiều. Không dùng mạo từ a Ị an hoặc các con số trước danh từ không đếm được.

Ví du: sadness (nỗi buồn), love (tình yêu), rice (gạo Ị cơm), oil (dầu), fur­niture (dồ gồ) ...

II. QUANTIFIERS (Từ chỉ sô lượng)

Từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ số lượng trong tiếng Anh được dùng tùy theo danh từ đếm được hay không đếm được.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Với danh từ đếm dược | Với danh từ không đếm được |
| some/ any (một vài) many (nhiều) a large number of (nhiều) a great number of (nhiều) plenty of (nhiều) a lot of/ lots of (nhiều) few/ a few (ítỊ một vài) every/ each (mỗi) several (một số) | some/ any (một ít) much (nhiều) a large amount of (nhiều) a great deal of (nhiều) plenty of (nhiều) a lot of/ lots of (nhiều) little/ a little (ít! một it) |

* Some thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định, câu yêu cầu, lời mời hoặc lời đề nghị; any thường được dùng trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn.

Ví du: Mary needs some stamps. She does not need any envelopes. (Mary cần vài con tem. Cô ấy không cần phong bì.)

Would you like some more coffee? (Anh dùng thêm một ít cà phê nữa nhé.)

* Many, much thường được dùng trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn; a lot of Ị lots of a large number / amount of, a great number I deal of plenty of thường được dùng trong câu khẳng định. Tuy nhiên, many Ị much luôn được dùng trong câu khẳng định có các từ very, too, so, as.

Ví du: We have a lot of things to do but we don’t have much time left. (Chúng ta có nhiều việc phải làm nhưng chúng ta không còn nhiều thời gian.)

The new law met with a great deal of opposition at local level.

(Luật mới gặp mhiều phản đối ở dịa phương.)

Peter drank so much wine that he felt sick.

(Peter uống nhiều rượu đến nỗi anh ấy bị bệnh.)

MODULE 2 11

- Few, little chỉ một số lượng rất ít, hầu như không có; a few, a little chỉ một số lượng nhỏ (gần nghĩa với some).

Ví du: She had few friends, and was generally not very happy.

(Cô ấy có rất ít bạn, nên thường cảm thấy không vui.)

I have a few friends here and we meet quite often. (Ớ đây tôi có vài người bạn và chúng tôi rất thường gặp nhau.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. Peter never feels lonely. He has got friends.

a. much b. so much c. many d. a great deal of

1. Mr. Pike lived with her three in the countryside.

a. child b. childs c. children d. childrens

1. My mother needs milk to make a cake.

a. a b. some c. any d. many

1. How apples are there in the basket?

a. many b. much c. some d. any

1. I would like to buy ?

a. a shoes b. a pair of shoes

c. the number of shoes d. a little shoes

1. Let’s have a break. Would you like to have coffee?

a. any b. many c. little d. some

1. Look! There are left over there.

a. a little b. much seats c. many seat d. a few seats

1. necessary.

a. A lot of the information are b. Some informations are

c. All the information is d. Many of the informations are

1. He was not offered the job because he knew about Information Technology.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| a. a little | b. little c. many | d. | a few |
| 10. She keeps | in the cupboard. |  |  |
| a. all rice | b. a lot of rices c. several rice | d. | many rice |
| 11. There are not | in that classroom. |  |  |
| a. any student • | b. a lot of student |  |  |
| c. a great deal of students d. many students | |  |  |
| 12. There is not | left in my account. |  |  |
| a. some moneys | b. a few money c. much money | d. | many money |
| 13. People have | when they get older. |  |  |
| a. much cells | b. fewer cells c. few cell | d. | plenty of cell |

1. He still finds time for by cooking candlelit dinners for his girlfriend.

a. several romances b. romance c. many romances d. a few romance

1. I cannot work because .

a. there are too many noises b. there is too much noise

c. of some noises d. of a number of noise

1. In Britain, there are .

a. fewer men than women

c. too much men

1. I think she was merely looking for a. happiness

c. many happiness

1. an imitation of life.

b. fewer mans than womans d. too much women

b. some happinesses d. a few happiness

a. Art is often called c. An amount of arts are often called

1. I am in trouble. Would you mind giving me

a. a few advice b. some advice c. advices

1. They have made

a. a lot of preparation

b. Arts are often called

d. As sum of art is often called

\_7

d.

c. lot of preparations

1. Do you serve ?

a. some vegetarian dishes c. any vegetarian dishes

1. We had after dinner.

b. a few ice cream

\_ to make

several advices before the Games starts next month, b. lots of preparation d. a lot of preparations

a. few ice cream

1. I do not have \_ a. much potatoes / a soup c. enough potatoes / the soup
2. There are on the shelf.

a. several bottles of wine c. several bottle of wine

1. We have left to finish the project.

b. many time c. a lot of times

1. many vegetarian dish d. vegetarian dish
2. a little ice cream d. little ice creams

b. several potato / soups d. a potatoes / the soups

b. several bottles of wines d. several bottle of wines

d. any time

a. no time

1. have trouble with mathematics.

a. A large rather number of student b. A rather large number of student c. A large rather number of students d. A rather large number of students

1. It requires reading.

a. few b. a few c. many d. an amount of

1. He hasn’t of passing his exams.

a. much hopes b. much hope c. many hope d. many hopes !

1. It is important to brush your at least twice a day.

a. teeth b. teeths c. tooth d. tooths

1. has its own private bathroom.

a. All bedroom b. A plenty of bedroom

c. Every bedroom d. Every bedrooms

1. Not teenagers spend time on reading books.

a. much / many b. many / much c. much / much d. many / many

1. We need money to send our son to Oxford University.

a. a large sum of b. a few of c. many d. lot of

MODULE 2 13

33. John wanted to buy a. a teethbrush c. a toothbrushes

b. some teethbrushes d. some toothbrushes

34. Intelligence is the ability to use thought and to understand things

and solve .

35

a. knowledges / problems c. knowledge / problems is bad for our

b. knowledge / a problems d. knowledges / problem

a. Nicotines / health b. Nicotine / health

c. Nicotines / healths d. Nicotine / healths

1. used to be very expensive when they first appeared.

a. Radios b. An amount of radios c. A radios d. Radio

1. I’m sorry, but the repair will take time.

a. a few b. a bit of c. many d. few

1. Mr. Pike has just bought three

a. ox b. oxes

1. She teaches

c. oxen d. oxens

and does not have much time for her own \_

40.

a. a couple of classes / researchs c. many classes / researches imported last year.

b. a lot of classes / research

d. a great deal of classes / research

b. The number of cars were d. A small number of car was

b. any chocolate d. a bar of chocolate

a. A small number of cars were c. An amount of cars were

1. I often enjoy after lunch.

a. chocolates c. a sheet of chocolate

1. The crew discovered off coast.

a. a school of fishes b. school of fish c. schools of fishes d. schools of fish

1. He wrote the answer on and threw it to me.

c. piece of papers d. pieces of papers . grazing.

c. herd of cattles d. a herd of cattles

are unloaded to build a new one.

d. heaps of bricks

a. a pieces of paper b. a piece of paper

1. They ran up the hill, seeing

a. herds of cattles b. herds of cattle

1. They demolished the old building and a. a heap of brick b. heap of bricks

c. heaps of brick of ducks on the river, b. Herd c. sheet

47. He sat quietly and followed his of thought.

46. Look! There is a a. flock

d. pile

a. train b. school

48. It is going to rain.

c. crowd d. bar

of dark clouds are gathering in the sky. c. masses d. crowds

of soap.

c. bar d. sheet

a. flocks b. herds

1. He went to the supermarket and bought a

a. cup b. tree

1. Her parents gave her a of pearls on her wedding day.

a. piece b. rope c. train d. dune

**MODULE 3**

COMPOUND NOUNS AND GENITIVE / POSSESSIVE CASE  
**(Danh từ ghép và sở hữu cách)**

1. **COMPOUND NOUNS (Danh từ ghép)**

Danh từ ghép (compound noun) là danh từ được thành lập từ hai hay nhiều từ. Các từ của một danh từ ghép có thể viết liền nhau, cách nhau bằng dấu gạch ngang, hay viết tách rời nhau,

Ví du: bedroom (phòng ngủ), check-in (sự đăng ký phòng), swimming pool (hồ bơi)

* Cách thành lập danh từ ghép

1. Danh từ + danh từ (noun + noun): armchair, bath-tub, newspaper
2. Tínih từ + danh từ (adjective + noun): mineral water, greenhouse
3. Danh động từ + danh từ (gerund + noun): washing machine, driving-licence
4. Danh từ + danh động từ (noun + gerund): weight-lifting, lorry driving
5. Danh từ + động từ (noun + verb): rainfall, toothpick, handshake
6. Động từ + danh từ (verb + noun): pickpocket, washbasin
7. Danh từ + giới từ (noun + preposition): passer-by, hanger-on
8. Giới từ + danh từ (preposition + noun): on-period, bystander
9. Động từ + trạng từ (verb + adverb): getaway, take-off
10. Trạng từ + động từ (adverb + verb): overthrow, outlook

\* Danh từ ghép có thể được thành lập bởi nhiều hơn hai từ: mother-in-law, merry-go-round

1. **GENITIVE / POSSESSIVE CASE (Sử hữu cách)**

Sở hữu cách được dùng để diễn đạt mối quan hệ sở hữu.

* Cách thành lập sở hữu cách

1. Thêm ’s vào sau chủ sở hữu với danh từ số ít, danh từ riêng, hoặc danh từ số nhiều không tận cùng bằng s.

Ví du: the boy’s bicycle (xe đạp của cậu bé)

Tom’s father (bố của Tom)

my children’s toys (dồ chơi của các con tôi)

1. Thêm dấu ’ vào sau danh từ số nhiều tận cùng bằng s.

Ví du: the students’ books (sách của các sinh viên)

the Pikes’ car (xe hơi của gia đình Pike)

1. Thêm ’s hoặc dấu \* sau danh từ số ít hoặc danh từ riêng tận cùng bằng s. Ví du: James’s / James’ girlfriend (bạn gái của James)

my boss’s / my boss’ office (văn phòng của sếp tôi.)

1. Với danh từ ghép, thêm ’s vào từ cuối cùng.

Ví du: my father-in-law’s property (tài sản của bố chồng tôi)

1. Khi có nhiều sở hữu chủ đồng sở hữu, thêm ’s hoặc ’ ở sở hữu chủ gần vậtJ người sở hữu nhất.

MODULE 3 lỗ

Ví du: Mary and Peter’s parents (bố mẹ của Mary và Peter - Mary và Peter có cùng bố mẹ)

Mary’s and Peter’s parents (bố mẹ của Mary và Peter - Mary và Peter không có cùng bố mẹ)

• Cách dùng sở hữu cách

Sở hữu cách ’s chủ yếu được dùng cho danh từ chỉ người hay động vật. Để chỉ sự vật, ý tưởng, ta dùng of + danh từ.

Ví du: my brother’s book (sách của anh tôi), the cat’s leg (chân của con mèo), the leg of the table (chân bàn), the result of the match (kết quả của trận đấu)

* Khi dùng sở hữu cách, không dùng mạo từ (a/ anl the) trước người hay vật thuộc quyền sở hừu.

Ví du: the wolfs ears (tai sói) [= the ears of the wolf]

* Sở hừu cách còn được dùng với danh từ chỉ châu lục, quốc gia, thành phố và các từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ thời gian, khoảng cách, tiền bạc, giá trị.

Ví du: the Europe’s population (dân sô của Châu Ấu)

New York’s tallest building (tòa nhà cao nhất New York) two years’ time (thời gian hai năm) a mile’s distance (khoảng cách một dặm)

ten pounds’ worth of novel (quyển tiểu thuyết trị giá 10 bảng)

* Có thế dùng ’s hoặc of với danh từ chỉ một tổ chức hoặc một nhóm người. Ví du: The firm’s new project/ The new project of the firm (dự án mới của

công ty)

* Có thể dùng ’s không có danh từ theo sau khi danh từ chính là các từ shop, school, house, church, hospital, office, surgery, firm hoặc danh từ chính đâ được đề cập trước đó.

Ví du: We had lunch at my aunt’s. (Chủng tôi ăn trưa ở nhà dì tôi.)

[= At my aunt’s house]

This isn’t my book. It’s my brother’s. (Đây không phải là sách của tôi. Đây là sách của anh tôi.) [= my brother’s book]

* Trong một số trường hợp, nghĩa của câu thay đổi giữa sở hữu cách ’s và cấu trúc of.

Ví du: This is a photograph of Peter’s. (Đây là tấm ảnh của Peter) [The photogrạph belongs to Peter.]

This is a photograph of Peter. (Đây là ảnh của Peter) [Peter is in the photograph.]

He’s Daisy’s brother. (Anh ấy là em trai của Daisy) [Daisy has probably one brother.]

He’s a brother of Daisy’s. (Anh ấy là một trong các em trai của Daisy) [Daisy has more than one brother.]

* Đôi khi có thể dùng chủ sở hừu như một tính từ, tuy nhiên có những trường hợp không dùng được vì có thể làm đổi nghĩa.

Ví du: the legs of the chair = the chair legs (chân bàn)

A truck of vegetables (một xe tải chở đầy rau) [A truck loaded with vegetables.]

Most people admire , and so do I.

9.

But: A vegetable truck (xe tải dùng để chở rau) [A truck used to cari$

vegetables.]

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose af bf c, or d that best completes the sentence,**

1.

**, or d that best completes the sentence.**

is the time when family members gather to welcome the first day

**2**.

3.

of the year.

a. New Year Eve b. New Year’s Eve c. Eve of New Year d. New-Year-Eve

Can you please tell me what is?

a. your phone number c. your number of phone

Mary usually has a

a. glass’ milk

4.

5.

b. your phone’s number d. your phone of number before going to school.

b. milk’s glass c. milk glass d. glass of milk is very interesting, I guess.

a. The book of the second chapter b. The book second chapter c. The second chapter book d. The second chapter of the book

I cannot remember though I have seen it.

6.

7.

8.

a. the name of the film c. the name film

is in the parking lot.

a. Peter and Mary new car c. Peter and Mary’s new car

were altogether different.

a. Lee’s and Clark’s expectations c. Lee’s and Clark expectations

My neighbor is a ,

a. driver of taxi b. taxi driver

b. the film of the name d. the name’s film

b. Peter’s and Mary’s new car d. Peter’s and Mary new car

1. Lee and Clark’s expectations d. Lee and Clark expectations
2. taxi’s driver d. driver’s taxi

a. the accomplishments’ Bill Gates b. Bill Gates accomplishments c. accomplishments of Bill Gates d. Bill Gates’s accomplishments

1. In Vietnam, is on November 20th.

a. Day of Teacher b. Day’s Teacher c. Teachers Day d. Teachers\* Day

1. I like reading better than any other books.

a. fiction’s science b. fiction of science c. science of fiction d. science fiction

1. had to be towed last night.

a. My car and Bill b. Bill’s and my car c. Bill and my car's d. Bill and my car

1. Do you often go to church on ?

a. Christmas Eve b. Christmas’ Eve c. Christmas’s Eve d. Christmas of Eve

1. is a day honoring mothers, celebrated on various days in many

places around the world.

a. Mother’s Day b. Mother Day c Day of Mother d. Day Mother’s

1. has changed lives of many women.

a. Liberation movement’s women b. Liberation movement o^ wnieh c. Women liberation movement d. Women’s liberation movement

MODULES ’If\*

1. My uncle is a . He works at a .

a. police’s officer / police’s station b. police officer / police’s station

c. police’s officer / police station d. police officer / police station

1. We do not have to wash the clothes any longer. We have just bought a .

a. washing machine b. washing’s machine

c. machine washing d. machine’s washing

1. to talk makes him unlike any other animal.

a. Man ability b. Man’s ability c. Ability man d. Man of ability

1. are nice. They visit our house sometimes.

a. My mother friends b. My mother’s friends

c. My mother friends’ d. My mothers’ friend

1. is delayed due to the weather.

a. Flight of tonight b. Flight’s tonight c. Tonight’s flight d. Tonight flight

1. is a doctor.

a. John’s and Jane’s brother b. John and Jane’s brother

c. John and Jane brother d. Jane’s brother and John

1. Children make up a large proportion of .

a. the world’s population b. the population world

c. the world population’s d. population of the world’s

1. has been broken.

a. My mother-in-law’s car b. My mother-in-law car

c. My mother’s-in-law car d. My mother-in-law of car

1. is the 1st of April, the day on which people traditionally play

tricks on each other.

a. April Fool Day b. April Fool’s Day c. April Fool of Day d. Fool Day of April

1. have populations of more than 5 million.

a. Many the world cities b. Many the world’s cities

c. Many of the world’s cities d. Many of the world cities

1. A is an area or building where people can leave their cars.

a. car’s park b. car park c. car of park d. park’s car

1. Charles Dickens is acclaimed as one of .

a. history’s the greatest novelists b. history’s greatest novelists

c. history greatest novelists d. history greatest’s novelists

1. After , Peter felt better and continued working.

a. break of twenty-minute b. twenty minutes break

c. twenty minute’s break d. twenty minutes’ break

1. is marked on March 8 every year.

a. Day International Women b. Day of International Women

c. International Women Day ' d. International Women’s Day

1. is good for our health.

a. Juice of fruit b. Fruit of juice c Fruit juice d. Fruit’s juice

1. After World War II, the USA has emerged as a .

a. world’s power b. world power c. world of power d. power of world

32.1 have just received a from my boyfriend.

a. valentine card b. valentine’s card c. valentine of card d. card’s valentine

1. is on the 14th of February.
2. St Valentine’s Day b. St Valentine Day

c. Day’s St Valentine d. St Valentine Day’s

1. is the big blue one on the corner.
2. The Taylors’s house b. The Taylors house

c. The Taylors’ house d. The Taylor’ house

1. I do not want to go out. I am really tired after .

a. work’s a hard day b. work of a hard day

c. a hard day’s work d. a hard day work

1. The top of Mount Everest is 8848m above .

a. level sea b. sea of level c. sea level d. sea’s level

1. Peter promised to complete the work in .
2. three hour’s time d. three hour time against England.

a. three hours time b. three hours’ time

1. Davies plays for the Barbarians in a. match of tomorrow

c. tomorrow match

1. John is .

a. Mary’s a friend b. Mary friend

1. She plans on opening a .

a. women’s clothing boutique

1. tomorrows’ match
2. tomorrow’s match
3. a Mary’s friend d. a friend of Mary’s
4. women clothing boutique
5. clothing boutique of women’s

c. womens’s clothing boutique

1. Her accommodates 20 people.

a. family of guest house b. guest house of family

c. family guest house d. family’s guest house

1. I collect to water my plants.

a. rain water b. rain’s water c. water’s rain d. water rain

1. After the triplets were born, our house was filled with .

a. baby cries b. baby’s cries c. babies’ cries d. babies cries

1. Several \_\_\_\_\_ are violent, b. childrens’s shows c. children’s shows d. children shows

\_ next month.

a. childrens shows

1. He will take a course for a a. Master degree b. Master’s degree c. Master of degree d. Degree’s master
2. There are three on the shelf.

a. bottles of wine b. bottles wine c. bottles’ wine d. wine of bottles

1. The boss allowed me to take a .

a. two weeks’ leave

b. two week’s leave d. two weeks’s leave

b. Vietnamese Nation’s d. Vietnamese National

1. two weeks leave
2. is September 2nd.

a. Vietnam National Day c. Vietnamese’s National Day

Day

Day

1. needs mending.

b. The front seat of the car

a. The car of the front seat c. The front’s seat of the car 50. For

1. The front seat’s car don’t let her know I told you about this, goodness sake b. goodness’ sake c. goodness’s sake d. sake’s goodness

MODULE 3 19

ARTICLES **(Mạo từ)**

**MODULE 4**

1. Mạo từ không xác định (indefinite articles): A / AN

Mạo từ không xác định được dùng trước danh từ đếm được số ít. A đứng trước danh từ bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm (consonant) hoặc một nguyên âm (vowel) nhưng được phát âm như một phụ âm. An đựợc dùng trước danh từ bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm và âm /i câm.

Ví du: a month /mAn0/ an orange /brandy

a uniform /'ịum.íbrrm/ an umbrella /Am'brelo/ a horse /ho:rs/ an hour /aoo(r)/

-A! an được dùng trong lời phát biểu có tính khái quát.

Ví du: An orange is rich in vitamin c. (Cam chứa nhiều vitamin c.)

-A/ an được dùng để nói về một chủ thể chưa từng được đề cập trước đó. Ví du: I met a beautiful girl on the way to work. (Trên đường đi làm, tôi gặp một cô gái xinh đẹp.)

-A/ an được dùng để giới thiệu nghề nghiệp, chức vụ.

Ví du: John is a teacher. (John là giáo viên.)

-A/ an được dùng trong một sô cụm từ chỉ số lượng nhất định: a lot of (nhiều), a great deal of (nhiều), a half (một nửa), a third (một phần ha),...

1. Mạo từ xác đỊnh (definite article): THE

1. Mạo từ xác định the được dùng:

* Khi người nói và người nghe biết rõ đối tượng được đề cập hoặc khi danh từ đã được đề cập đến trước đó.

Ví du: John has just bought a new car. He is very fond of the car. (John vừa mua một chiếc xe mới. Anh ấy thích chiếc xe dó lắm.)

* Khi đề cập đến khái niệm phổ thông - điều mà mọi người đều biết.

Ví du: The earth goes round the sun. (Trái đất quay quanh mặt trời.)

* Khi nói chung về một loài động vật, một loại dụng cụ, máy móc hoặc nhạc khí.

Ví du: The tiger is in danger of becoming extinct. (Cọp đang có nguy cơ bị tuyệt chủng.)

Can you play the piano? (Bạn biết chơi đàn dương cầm không?) But: My mother gave me a piano on my birthday. (Mẹ tôi tặng tôi một cây đàn dương cầm vào ngày sinh nhật của tôi.)

* Trong so sánh nhất.

Ví du: He is the tallest in my class. (Anh ấy là người cao nhất lớp tôi.)

* Đối với danh từ không đếm được, dùng the nếu nói đến một đối tượng cụ thể, không dùng the nếu nói chung.

Ví du: Coffee is a popular beverage. (Cà phê là một loại thức uống dược ưa thích.)

The coffee you make is always delicious. (Cà phê mà bạn pha lúc nào củng ngon.)

* Trước tên đại dương, biển, sông, vịnh, nhóm hồ, dăy núi, quần đảo, sa mạc: the Pacific Ocean (Thái Bình Dương), the Black Sea (Biển Đen), the Volga, the Himalayas (Dãy. núi Himalaya), the Gulf of Mexico (Vịnh Mexico), the Rift Valley lakes (nhóm hồ Rilf Valley), the Virgin Islands (quần đảo Virgin), the Sahara (sa mạc Sahara)
* Trước tên quốc gia có từ Republic, Kingdom, State, Union, hoặc các tên ở số nhiều: the United States (nước Mỹ), the Philippines (nước Philippine)
* Trước school, university, college + of + tên riêng: the University of Texas (Đại học Texas) [= Texas University]
* Trước tên các cuộc chiến tranh, trừ thế chiến (World War I / World War II): the Civil War (Nội chiến)
* Trước tên nhừng tài liệu, sự kiện lịch sử: the Treaty of Geneva (Hiệp

định Geneva)

-Trước tên tàu thuyền, xe lửa, máy bay: the Titanic (tàu Titanic)

* Trước tên một gia đình hoặc một nhóm nhạc: the Pikes (Gia đình Pike) the Beatles (ban nhạc Beatles)
* Trước tính từ để chỉ một nhóm đối tượng có cùng thuộc tính: the poor (người nghèo), the disabled (người tàn tật)
* Trước tên các khách sạn, nhà hàng, quán rượu, rạp hát, rạp chiếu bóng, viện bảo tàng, phòng trưng bày, thư viện, câu lạc bộ và một số các tòa nhà, công trình nổi tiếng: the Odeon Cinema (rạp Odeon), the National Museum (Viện bảo tàng1 quốc gia), the Vatican (tòa thánh Vatican)

2. Mạo từ the không được dùng:

* Trước danh từ số nhiều và danh từ không đếm được với nghĩa chung.

Ví du: Computers have great effects on our lives. (Máy vi tính có ảnh

hưởng lớn đến đời sống của chủng ta.) [NOT The computers have\*. .]

* Trước tên một cái hồ, một ngọn núi, hoặc một hòn đảo: Lake Superior (hồ Superior), Mount Everest (núi Everest), Hokkaido Island (đảo Hokkaido)
* Trước tên hành tinh, lục địa, quốc gia, tiểu bang, thành phố, thị trấn: Mars (sao Hảo), Europe (châu Âu), France (nước Pháp), Texas (bang Texas), London (thủ đô Luân đôn)
* Trước tên đường phố, công viên, quảng trường: Shirley Street (đường Shirley), Hyde Park (công viên Hyde), Times Square (quảng trường Tirrịes)
* Trước tên các môn học, các môn thể thao và các bữa ăn trong ngày.

Ví du: Are you interested in English? (Bạn có thích môn tiếng Anh không?) Do you know how to play tennis? (Bạn có biết chơi tennis không?) What, do you often have for dinner? (Bạn thường ăn món gì vào bừa tối ?)

But: The dinner we had last night was wonderful. (Bữa tối chúng ta

thưởng thức tối qua thật tuyệt vời.)

* Trước một số danh từ chỉ nơi chốn: school, university, college, hospital, church, prison khi đề cập đến mục đích sử dụng của những nơi này.

MODULE 4 21

Ví du: Peter is a student. He goes to school every morning. (Peter là hoc sinh. Anh ấy đi học mỗi sáng.)

But: The school is a mile from here. (Trường học cách đây một dặm.)

(school được đề cập như một nơi chốn cụ thể)

- Trong các cụm từ: at work, go to work, at home, go home, go to bed, in bed, at sea, go to sea, in town, go into town, watch TV, on TV

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose ay b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.**

1. She likes reading books, collecting stamps and going to cinema.

a. the / 0 / 0 b. 0 / 0 / the c. 0 / the / 0 d. 0 / the / a

1. My country borders on Pacific Ocean.

a. a b. an c. the d. 0

1. Every day, he gets up at 7 o’clock. He has breakfast and then goes

to work. He often comes to work by car.

a. the / the b. a / the c. the / a d. 0 / 0

1. My friend is fireman. Let’s ask him for help.

a. a / 0 b. the / the c. an / the d. 0 / the

1. She is MC. She can help US to entertain guests in our wedding.

a. an / the b. a / 0 c. the / 0 d. a / the

1. more you read smarter you are.

a. 0 / the bỵ The / the c. 0 / 0 d. The / 0

1. My grandmother gave me piano on my birthday, but what’s

pity, I cannot play piano.

a. 0 / 0 / the b. the / the /a c. a / a / the d. the / 0 / a

1. Tom said he was employee at fast food restaurant.

restaurant is on Boston Street.

a. An / the / A b. 0 / the / A c. The / 0 / The d. An / a / The

1. She is staying at hotel in a small town in Colorado.

town is near Denver.

a. the / 0 / 0 b. a / 0 / The c. the / the / A d. an / the / A

1. She is thinking about attending English course in summer.

a. an / the b. a / 0 c. the / a d. an / a

1. I went to airport at 6:00 AM yesterday. I had to catch flight to Paris.

a. an / the / the b. 01 the / 0 c. the / a/ 0 d. a / a / 0

1. Jim, old friend of mine, used to work in downtown Los

Angeles. He had a good job in one of biggest law firms in the city.

a. an / the / 0 b. a / the / 0 , c. the / 0 / a d. an / 0 / the

1. Lee, my classmate, comes from Philippines. He not only plays

football very well but also is good at mathematics.

a^ 0 / 0 / the b. the / a / the c. 0 / the / the d. the /0/0

1. Mount Everest is in \_\_\_\_\_ Himalayas. It is tallest

mount in the world.

a. 0 / an / the b. A / an / a c. The /0/0 d. 0 / the / the

1. Barack Obama is President of United States.

a. the / the b. a / 0 c. the / 0 d. the / an

1. atheist does not believe in God.

a. The / the b. An / 0 c. 0 / the d. An / a

1. Peter has been ill for a week. He was taken to hospital yesterday.

He is in hospital now.

a. the / a b. 0 / 0 c. an / an d. the / an

1. He never listens to radio. He prefers watching television.

a. a / a b. a / the c. the / 0 d. 0 / the

1. I do not go to theatre very often. I prefer films to plays.

a. a / the / the b. 0 / 0 / 0 c. the / the / the d. the /0/0

1. sun is a ball of fire in the sky that the Earth goes round. It gives

us heat and light.

a. The / an / a b. The /0/0 c. A / the / the d. 0 / a / a

1. university will be built in center of the town.

a. A / the b. An / the c. The / a d. An / a

1. River Nile is longest river of all.

a. 0 / 0 b. A / the c. The / the d. 0 / a

1. smog is big problem in big cities.

a. The / 0 / the b. 0 / a / 0 c. The /0/0 d. A / the / the

1. Women’s Day is on eighth of March.

a. The /0 b. 0 / the c. The / an d. 0 / an

1. Many people voluntarily offer care for \* elderly and disabled.

a. the/ the b. an / a c. an / the d. 0 / 0

1. By \_ time we had just left the office, alarm went off.

a. 0 / the b. a / an c. a / the d. the / an

1. I was born in warm family. My parents are both teachers

of English. So, I am good at English.

a. a / 0 / 0 b. the / the / an c. a / the / the d. the / 0 / an

1. He grew up in orphanage in United Kingdom.

a. the /0 b. an / an c. the / an d. an / the

1. Ian is described as honest and hard-working boy. He is also \_

most social and helpful in our class.

a. an / 0 b. an / the c. the / a d. a / a

1. What make is your car? It is Toyota Altis.

a. a / 0 b. the /0 c. 0 / a d. the / the

1. Laura is friendly. She can make friends easily.

a. a b. an c. the d. 0

1. That car can run at speed of 180 miles hour.

a. the / an b. a / the c. a / a d. the / a

1. Thomas often goes to school in morning. He is rarely late

for school.

a. 0 / the /0 b. the / a / the c. a / the / the d. the / 0 / 0

MODULE 4 tt

1. most children like sweets.

a. The / the b. A / the c. 0 / 0 d. The / 0

1. You can get information you need through Internet.

a. the / an b. an / the c. the / the d. an / an

1. experience is best teacher.

a. An / the b. 0 / the c. The / a d. 0 / a

1. I happened to see Mary on way home.

a. 0 / the b. the / an c. a / the d. the / 0

1. If our body does not have enough cholesterol, we may not be able

to survive. On other hand, if the body has too much cholesterol,

the excess begins to line the arteries.

a. the / an b. 0 / an c. the / 0 d. 0 / the

1. They left Hyde Park at midday and went shopping at the commer­cial center in afternoon.

a. the / the b. a / an c. the / an d. 0 / the

1. River Thames flows through London, capital of England.

a. The / the b. A / a c. 0 / 0 d. The / a

1. last night the hurricane was heading into Gulf of Mexico.

a. The b. 0 / the c. The / a ,d. A / 0

1. In Britain cars run on left.

a. the / the / 0 b. the / 0/ a c. 0 / 0 / the d. 0 / the / 0

1. Each of us is unique combination of health and sickness.

a. a / 0 / 0 b. an / the / the c. the / a / a d. the /0/0

1. plants recycle carbon dioxide and create oxygen, which we need to

breathe. most of our food comes from plants.

a. 0 / 0 / 0 b. The / 0 / the c. 0 / the /0 d. 0 / a / the

1. Taylors decided that they would employ architect to do work.

a. The / a / the b. A / 0 / a c. 0 / the / a d. The / an / the

1. On night of 14 April 1912, during its voyage, Titanic hit

iceberg, and sank two hours and forty minutes later.

a. 0 / the / the b./the / the / an c. a / 0 / the d. a / a / the

1. The largest lake in the United States is Lake Superior, one of

Great Lakes, located on the United States - Canada border.

a. a / 0 . b. a / a c. 0 / the d. the / 0

1. coffee is his favorite drink. He often has coffee before he

has breakfast.

a./0 / a / 0 / b. The / 0 / the c. The / a / the d. 0 / the / a

1. Look! school of fish is in the lake.

a/A /0 b. The / the c. The / a d. A / the

1. She has number of business contacts in Las Vegas.

a. 0 / the b. 0 / 0 « c. the / the d. a / 0

PREPOSITIONS **(Giới từ)**

**MODULE 5**

Giới từ là từ hay cụm từ thường được dùng trước danh từ hay đại từ để chỉ mối liên hệ giừa các từ này với các thành phần khác trong câu.

I. Các loại gĩởi từ (Kinds of preposition)

1. Giới từ chỉ thời gian ((Prepositions of time)

* IN (trong, vào) được dùng để chỉ các buổi trong ngày (ngoại trừ at night), tháng, năm, mùa, thập niên, thế kỷ hoặc khoảng thời gian ở tương lai. Ví du: in the morning, in January, in 1990, in the summer, in the 1990s,

in the 20th century, in the Middle Age, in ten minutes

* IN TIME: đúng lúc, kịp lúc

Ví du: Will you be home in time for dinner? (Anh có về nhà kịp giờ ăn tối không?)

* AT (vào lúc) được dùng để chỉ thời điểm hoặc các kỳ nghỉ (toàn bộ nhừng ngày trong kỳ nghỉ)

Ví du: at 6 o’clock, at night, at noon, at midnight, at bedtime, at dawn, at the weekend, at Christmas, at New Year, at Easter -At còn được dùng trong một số cụm từ chỉ thời gian: at the momenty at presenty at the same time, at once, at that time, at first, at last

* ON (vào) dược dùng để chỉ ngày trong tuần, ngày tháng trong năm, ngày trong kỳ nghỉ hoặc các buổi trong ngày cụ thể.

Ví du: on Monday, on 5th January, on Christmas Day, on Monday morn­ing, on one’s birthday

* ON TIME: đúng giờ

Ví du: The train arrived right on time. (Tàu dến rất đúng giờ.)

* **FOR** (trong) + khoảng thời gian: for two months, for a long time
* SINCE (từ, từ khi) + mốc thời gian: since last Monday, since 2002
* UNTIL / TILL (đến, cho đến): until 5 o’clock, till midnight
* BEFORE (trước, trước khi) : before lunchtime #
* AFTER (sau, sau khi): after lunchtime
* DURING (trong, suốt): during World War II
* BY (vào lúc): by the end of May
* FROM ... TO (từ ... đến): from morning to noon

1. Giới từ chỉ nơi chốn (Prepositions of place)

* AT **(ở,** tại) được dùng để chỉ vị trí tại một điểm.

**Ví du**: **at** home, **at** school, **at** the bus stop, **at** the airport, **at** the **office,** ạt the cinema, **at** the seaside, **at** the grocer’s, **at** the top/ **bottom, at** the beginning/ end, **at** the front/ back

* Lưu ý: arrive at the village/ the airport / the railway station

But: arrive in Vietnam/ Ho Chi Minh City

MODULE 5 25

* IN (trong, ở trong) dược dùng để chỉ vị trí trong một diện tích, một không

gian; dùng trước tên đường, tên thị trấn, thành phố, quốc gia, miền,

phương hướng hoặc dùng với phương tiện đi lại bằng xe hơi (car).

Ví du: in a box, in a small room, in the countryside, in the world, in Oxford Street, in London, in Vietnam, in the east, in a car/ taxi

* Lưu ý: in a car (trong xe hơi) but: by car (bằng xe hơi)
* ON (trên, ở trên) được dùng để chỉ vị trí trên bề mặt, số tầng (trong một

tòa nhà), trước tên đường (ƯS) hoặc dùng với một số phương tiện đi lại. Ví du: on the table, on the wall, on the ground, on the first floor, on

Albert Street, on a bus/ train/ plane/ (motor)bike/ horse, on foot - On còn được dùng trong một số cụm từ: on the left / right, on the farm, on the coast/ beach, on TV/ radio,...

* ABOVE / OVER (bên trên - không tiếp xúc với bề mặt)

Ví du: Her name comes above mine on the list.

(Ten cô ấy ở trên tên tôi trong danh sách.)

The sign over the door said: “Exit”. (Tấm bảng trên cửa viết “Lối ra”.)

* UNDER / BELOW (ở dưới, dưới**)**

Ví du: The shoes are under the chair. (Đôi giày ở dưới ghế)

The temperature has fallen below zero. (Nhiệt độ hạ xuống dưới OPC)

* IN FRONT OF (ở phía trước), BEHIND (ở phía sau), IN THE MIDDLE OF (ở giữa) Ví du: I hung my raincoat in front of/ behind the door. (Tôi treo áo mưa

trước Ị sau cửa.)

* NEAR (gần)

Ví du: Is there a train station near here? (Có ga xe lửa gần đây không?)

* NEXT TO, BY, BESIDE (bên cạnh, kế bên)

Ví du: Peter is standing by the gate. (Peter dang đứng bên cổng.)

* BETWEEN (ở giữa hai người ỉ vật), AMONG (ở giữa nhiều người I vật)

Ví du: Tom is sitting between Mary and Peter.

(Tom ngồi giữa Mary và Peter.)

Tom is among the crowd. (Tom ở giữa đám đông.)

* INSIDE (ở bên trong), OUTSIDE (ở bên ngoài)

Ví du: Luckily, no one was inside the building when it collapsed.

(May mắn là không ai ở bên trong tòa nhà khi nó sập.)

* OPPOSITE (đối 'diện)

Ví du: They sat opposite each other. (Họ ngồi đối diện nhau.)

3. Giới từ chỉ sự chuyển động (Prepositions of movement)

* TO (đến)

Ví du: He goes to school by bus. '(Anh ấy đến trường bằng xe buýt.)

* FROM ... TO (từ ... đến)

Ví du: How far is it from New York to California?

(Từ New York den California bao xa?)

* THROUGH (xuyên qua)

Vi du: They walked through the woods. (Họ đi xuyên qua khu rừng.)

* ACROSS (ngang qua)

Ví du: The children ran straight across in front of our car.

(Bọn trẻ chạy hăng ngang ngay trước xe chúng tôi.)

* ROUND/ AROUND (quanh)

Ví du: The Earth moves round/ around the Sun.

(Trái đất xoay quanh mặt trời.)

* ALONG (dọc theo)

Ví du: We had a walk along the river bank. (Chúng tôi đi dạo dọc bờ sông.)

* UP (lẽn) / DOWN (xuống)

Ví du: We followed her up the stairs. (Chúng tôi theo cô ấy lên lầu.)

* TOWARD(S) (về phía)

Ví du: Mary stood up and walked towards Peter. (Mary dứng lên và di về phía Peter.)

4. Một số giới từ khác

* Giới từ chỉ mục đích hoặc chức năng: for, to, in order to, so as to (để) -Giới từ chỉ nguyên nhân: for, because of, owning to (vì, bởi vì)
* Giới từ chỉ tác nhân, phương tiện hoặc cách thức: by, with (bằng, bởi)
* Giới từ chỉ cách thức: by (băng cách), with (bang, với), without (không có), in (bàng)
* Giới từ chỉ sự tương tự: like (giống)

**II. Giới từ theo sau danh từ, tính từ và động từ (Prepositions following nouns, adjec­tives, and verbs)**

1. Noun + preposition

FOR

demand for: nhu cầu về reason for: lý do về responsibility for: trách nhiệm talent for: tài năng cure for: việc chữa trị cho IN

need for: sự cần thiết cho reputation for: sự nổi tiếng regret for: nuối tiếc admiration for: khâm phục desire for: sự mong muốn

increase in: phát triển, tăng belief in: tin

interest in: *thích, quan tâm*

rise in: phát triển, tăng decrease in: giảm experience in: (có) kinh nghiệm delay in: trì hoãn, hoãn lại

OF

advantage / disadvantage of: thuận lợi lack of: thiếu benefit of: lợi ích sense of: ỷ thức

*bất lợi*

cause of: nguyên nhản knowledge of: kiến thức opinion of: ý kiến example of: ví dụ

damage to: sự hư hại (đối với) reaction to: phản ứng attitude to: thái độ threat to: de dọa

invitation to: lời mời solution to: giải pháp access to: phương tiện reply to: trả lời, đáp lại

MODULE 5 27

ON

effect on: ảnh hưởng advice on: khuyên WITH

influence on: ảnh hưởng report on: báo cáo

connection with: sự liên quan với association with: sự kết giao với trouble with: (có) vấn dề với

comparison between: so sánh

dedicated to: tận tụy addicted to: nghiện devoted to: tận tâm

capable of: có năng lực frightened of: sợ proud of: tự hào scared of: hoảng sợ independent of: độc lập

excited about: hào hứng concerned about: quan tâm sorry about: Xin lỗi (về)

known for: nổi tiếng late for: trễ

involved in: có liên quan successful in: thành công

clever/ skillful at: khéo léo (về) excellent at: xuất sắc (về)

listen to: lắng nghe adapt to: thích nghi adjust to: điều chinh

apologize for: Xin lỗi pay for: trả tiền

relationship with: mối quan hệ với contact with: sự tiếp xúc với link with: liên kết với BETWEEN

difference between: sự khác biệt

1. Adjective + preposition **TO**

opposed to: phản đối accustomed to: quen committed to: tận tụy OF

afraid of: SỢ fond of: thích tired of: chán guilty of: có tội

aware/ conscious of: nhận thức ABOUT

happy about: hạnh phúc, vui anxious/ worried about: lo lẳng sad/ upset about: buồn/ thất vọng FOR

famous for: nổi tiếng responsible for: chịu trách nhiệm IN

interested in: quan tâm rich in: giàu có, phong phú AT

good/ bad at: giỏi! dở (về) surprised/ amazed at: ngạc nhiên

1. Verb + preposition **TO**

object to: phản đối devote to: cống hiến add to: thêm vào FOR

account for: giải thích excuse for: xin lỗi seach for: tìm kiếm

OF

accuse of: buộc tội consist of : bao gồm think of: nghĩ về WITH

approve of: tán thành hear of: nghe tin

argue with: cài nhau với communicate with: giao tiếp

worry about: lo lẳng forget about: quên

look at: nhìn laugh at: cười

concentrate on: tập trung depend on: phụ thuộc plan on: có kế hoạch

participate in: tham gia

agree with: dồng ý provide with: cung cấp compare with: so sánh ABOUT

think about: nghỉ về complain about: phàn nàn learn about: biết AT

arrive at / in: đến glance at: liếc ON

congratulate on: chúc mừng comment on: phê bình insist on: nài nỉ, đòi rely on: tin cậy IN

believe in: tin succeed in: thành công

t

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose a, b,** c, **or d that best completes the sentence.**

1. Peter promised to come here 9 o’clock Monday morning.

a. within / at b. about / upon c. at / on d. for / in

1. John was born March 1st, 2000. He was to school 2006

when he was the age of six.

a. at / on / about b. on / in / at c. from / at / about d. in / for / on

1. My father often goes to work early the morning and returns home

midday.

a. in / at b. on / for c. at / about d. up / to

1. We will have completed our work next month, and then we will

have an interesting vacation summer

a. since / on b. for / of c. on / at d. by / in

1. I often busy weekdays and free the weekend.

a. at / for b. in / on c. during / within d. on / at

1. Peter has worked for our company 1999, nearly ten years.

the time, he has been working very hard.

a. since / for / During b. for / in / At

c. on / from / For d. through / about / On

MODULE 5 29

1. Mary lives 153 Oxford Street in London. Her work office is

the tenth floor of a building near her house. Mary often says she prefers living the countryside and working the farm.

a. inside / at / on / by b. in / from / by / in c. at / on / in / on d. on / in / at / for

1. Daisy is standing the table. She is opening the drawer

which she keeps her savings.

a. next to / over b. by / in c. on / from d. through / into

1. Iam often school in the morning and do research or read books

the school library. night, I stay home and prepare for my lessons.

a. at / at / At b. in / from / On c. to / through / In d. out / in / For

1. The victim was a shop when he was attacked and the police were

the spot immediately.

a. under / to b. between / in c. above / at d. outside / on

1. Look! Peter is the last group. He has never won a race. He is often

\_\_\_\_\_ the others.

a. among / behind b. between / under c. in / above d. at / through

1. After working a long time, we relaxed the shade the branches.

a. to / from / of b. off / for / up c. on / over / under d. for / in / beneath

1. If you want to reach that shelf you had better stand the chair

which is the table.

a. among / by b. beneath / in c. on / next to d. under / above

1. Peter is standing the bus stop to wait for the bus. He often arrives

at the office time.

a. from / at b. at / on c. to / in d. by / for

1. He made his escape by jumping a window and getting a waiting car.

a. on / up b. out of / into c. over / out d. through / by

1. To get to the Marketing Department, you have to go those stairs

and then walk the corridor \_\_\_\_\_ the end.

a. up / along / to b. upon / through / in c. in / over / through d. by / up / for

1. You can read such advertisements the newspaper, or watch them TV.

a. in / on b. at / from c. on / in d. through / at

1. She took the key her pocket and put it the lock. She was so

astonished to find that the door unlocked. Someone had broken into the house, a. up / away b. from / by c. away / on d. out of / into

1. Harry comes to work car but I prefer to come foot, al­though times I am late work.

a. on / by / from / at b. with / through / on / in

c. by / on / at / for d. in / with / in / on

1. I do not like the people who live in the apartment mine. They

sometimes make noise and have a quarrel . us.

a. over / for b. upon / about c. above / with d. up / at

1. My relationship with Mary is wonderful. I have still been contact

her since we left high school. Although sometimes her ideas are

different \_\_\_\_\_\_ mine, we are best friends.

a. at / for / in b. in / with / from c. on / about / up d. of / to / with

1. I have a reason doing that although my parents do not approve

my work. I think they may agree me when I give an

explanation to them.

1. for / of / with b. of / at / about c. on / about / upon d. at / off / for
2. When we arrived the village, the only hotel in the area was still

construction so we had to spend the night in a small inn.

a. at / under b. for / of c. toward / in d. on / over

1. She is the cause all his problems. She often makes him be worried

what she has done.

a. from / over b. to / at

c. for / on d. of / about

our financial situation. We were grateful

1. He provided the solution

him being so kind.

1. in / on / with c. of / by / on

a. at / with / in

1. John is the person standing the window,

the long blonde hair.

a. on / for b. at / by c. through / in

1. Unfortunately, he was hopeless being

d. to / to / for next to the woman

d. beside / with \_ time. He was repri­

manded by a teacher

being late.

c. off / at / with d. in / through / from

responsibility work.

d. about / off / in

the stock market!

d. at / upon the end of last year, d. to / at

a. through / in / of b. at / on / for

1. I’m really angry John for his total lack

a. with / of / for b. at / in / to c. in / from / of

1. I quite sympathize you for your losses

a. with / on b. for / off c. over / in

1. I thought you had paid the rent

a. on / during b. for / until c. at / in

1. - Do you get tired answering the same questions every day?

my work.

- No, I am interested .

1. from / on d. for / to

a. through / about b. of / in

1. Television is an effective means

and old alike, are fond

a. at / on / through b. in / at / upon

1. She retired early account

a. in / off / upon b. for / from / on

communication. People, young

watching TV their free time.

c. of / of / in d. for/ on / during ill health. Now, she lives retirement.

c. on / of / in

d. with / in / during . you.

d. about / over

1. John said that he was sorry shouting

a. in / with b. for / at c. on / off

1. At first I was very angry his behaviors but later when he apolo­gized doing like that I forgave him.

a. in / from b. at / for c. on / in d. of / with

1. I can go my own. You needn’t come me.

b. though / about c. up / over

a. on / with

1. My friend and I always keep

usually write immediately.

a. off / upon b. on / about c. in / back

1. my opinion, Peter is not really clever \_

d. for / to touch by mail. When I get a letter, I

1. by / to

\_ solving problems, d. In / at

a. To / against b. About / in

c. On / of

MODULE 6 31

1. There are many different ways comparing the economy of one

nation that of another.

a. from / on b. to / of c. for / on d. of / with

1. They accused John robbing the bank. The court sentenced him

5 years jail.

a. about / of / on b. for / through / at c. of / to / in d. at / during / for

1. He took advantage : his connections at the company.

a. of b. in c. for d. with

1. He specializes technical translation. He can translate the instruc­tions Japanese.

a. in / into b. at / to c. for / against d. with / out

1. Many of gorillas are danger dying out. They are working

to save mountain gorillas extinction.

a. for / away / with b. in / of / from c. on / through / off d. at / for / through

1. - Do you object my smoking?

- You had better stop smoking. It is bad your health.

a. off / in b. from / on c. to / for d. against / at

1. You should involve your children physical activities and provide

them chances to take part in sport games.

a. of / for b. in / with c. on / toward d. inside / in

1. Peter reminded me Tom, whom I got acquainted three

years ago. I have not met him again that time.

a of / with / since b. about / to / during c. on / about / from d. with / at / in

1. He was listening the announcements broadcast the radio.

a. about / over b. from / through c. for / in d. to / on

1. John got the car to wait Daisy, whom he had fallen in

love for two years.

a. into / about / of b. through / to / for c. up / on / to d. out of / for / with

1. She had succeeded persuading Derek the feasibility of the project.

a. from / for b. with / upon c. in / of d. at / from

1. Your attitude Italian dressing is not really proper. As a rule, Italians

are very conscious their dress and have a great sense style.

a. on / over / toward b. to / of / of c. with / at / in d. upon / to / for

**MODULE 6]**

PHRASAL VERBS **(Cụm động**

Cụm động từ (phrasal verbs) là một động từ kết hợp với giới từ, trạng từ hoặc đôi khi cả hai để tạo thành một động từ mới thường có nghĩa khác với động từ chính.

Ví du: run into (gặp, ưa phải), take ofĩ (cởi ra), look forward to (mong chờ) I ran into (= meet) my teache^ at the movies last night.

(Tôi gặp thầy giáo ở rạp chiếu phim tối hôm qua.)

* Cụm động từ có thể là nội động từ (intransitive) hoặc ngoại động từ (transitive). Một số cụm động từ có thể được dùng cả hai cách.

Ví du: He suddenly showed up. (Anh ấy bỗng nhiên xuất hiện.) [I]

I myself made up the story. (Chính tôi đã bịa ra câu chuyện.) [T]

* Một số cụm động từ có tân ngữ có thể tách rời động từ và trạng từ/ giới từ, tân ngừ được đặt trước hoặc sau trạng từ/ giới từ.

Ví du: She took her coat off. or: She took off her coat.

(Cô ấy cởi áo khoác ra.)

Nhưng đại từ làm tân ngữ luôn đứng trước trạng từ/ giới từ.

Ví du: She took it off. (NOT She **took off it**.)

* Một số cụm động từ không thể tách rời; tân ngữ luôn đứng sau trạng tù/ giới từ.

Ví du: She stayed at home to look after her children. (Cô ấy ở nhà

chăm sóc con cái.)

[NOT She-stayed -at-home to **look h**e**r**-**ehildrcn aft**e**r**.]

• Một số cụm động từ thông dụng

break down = stop working

break in/ into = get into (a building) illegally

break off = stop doing sth

break up = separate

bring back = remember

bring in = introduce

call off = cancel

call back = return a phone call

call in/ on = visit

carry on = continue

carry out = execute

come across = find sth or meet sb by chance

come out = disappear

cheer up = make happy

cross out = delete

cut out = quit

cut off = stop (a supply, a relationship) do up = fasten drop in = visit finish off = complete get on = deal with; continue get over = overcome get up = wake up; get out of bed give off = produce heat, light, a smell or a gas

go back = return go on = continue go out = leave

go off = ring, explode

go up = rise; increase

give up = quit; surrender

hang up = end (a telephone conversation)

keep on = continue

keep off = not eat, drink, or take sth bad

keep out = prevent entry

keep up with = maintain progress with

leave out = omit

let sb down = make sb disappointed look after = take care of look back = remember sth that happenned in the past look for = search for, seek look into = investigate look over = to examine look up = find information pass out = distribute; become unconscious point out = show

put out = extinguish (a fire, cigarette, or candle)

stand for = represent shut up = be quiet slow down = reduce speed use up = use completely take off = leave; remove sth that you are wearing

take up = start doing sth

MODULE 0 33

take over = start doing, assume responsibility turn on/ off = switch on/ off

turn up/ down = increase/ reduce the amount of sound, heat etc.

talk over = discuss

wear off = gradually disappear

wear out = become damaged

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. - Look ! There is a car coming.

- The driver should slow when he is coming round the bend.

a. up / in b. out / down c. for / on d. into / off

1. Could you please turn the stereo? The music is interesting.

a. up b. off c. round d. to

1. How can you put with your brother? He is talkative and unreliable.

a. on b. up c. off d. at

1. I think I should take golf this year. I will try my best to go

with my plan.

a. of / to b. from / for c. up / ahead d. on / off

1. She had to hang \_\_\_\_\_ because someone else wanted to use the phone,

a. off b. in c. for d. up

1. I must go a diet. I put a lot of weight while I was on vacation.

a. through / off b. round / away c. for / with d. on / on

1. What do the initials USA stand ?

a. up b. on c. for d. with

1. Livy’s getting very well in Russian. She takes practicing

the language every day.

a. up / off b. on / to c. through / in d. in / up

1. The airhostess asked the passengers to do the seat-belt before the

plane took .

a. up / off b. on / away c. over / in d. for / up

1. The fireworks went in all their colors and lit the sky.

a. off / up b. upon / beyond c. among / in d. up / of

1. So many people were absent that we had to call the meeting.

a. on b. with c. off d. in

1. He came some of his old love letters in his wife’s drawer.

a. forward b. along ' c. across d. up

1. I had to stand for the boss while she went .

a. of / round b. up / over c. in / away d. on / ahead

1. Don’t worry, the pain should wear fairly soon. You will get your illness.

a. on / through b. off / over c. for / with d. in / for

1. I have to send a tow truck because my car broke .

a. for / down b. under / of c. up / into d. in / off

1. I do not remember where I her number down; it is on a little piece

of paper somewhere.

a. got b. wrote c. kept d. sat

1. The boy off his jacket and it away.

a. sent / took b. hung / handed c. got / showed d. took / put

1. I managed to to the diet and off sweet foods.

a. take / eat b. write / call c. go / look d. stick / keep

1. Whenever I lit a cigarette, my wife said, “ it out! You cannot smoke in the house.”

a. put b. turn c. light d. hand

1. My mother often complains, “You’re so messy. I always have to up after you.”

a. put b. go c. clean d. keep

1. rid of those old shoes. They are out.

a. Take / turning b. Call / putting c. Get / wearing d. Go / taking

ar

1. If you down something, you try to make people believe that it is

not particularly important.

a. play b. go c. cut d. call

1. Did you have to through an entrance examination?

a. hope b. get c. take d. hold

1. He upon himself the responsibility for protecting her.

a. looked b. took c. cleaned d. handed

1. I was late for work because my alarm clock did not off.

a. turn b. put c. send d. go

1. The stain will out if you wash it.

a. come b. keep c. shake d. turn

1. You made me disappointed. I would like you did not me down any more.

a. hold b. slow c. let d. go

1. I don’t know why their marriage is up. They end in divorce.

a. approving b. going c. breaking d. putting

1. After two hours of hard work, we decided to off for a little cup of coffee.

a. get b. look c. put d. break

1. When Mary sees blood, she out, so she cannot up medicine.

a. keeps / get b. passes / take c. holds / show d. walks / turn

Choose a, b, c, or d that has the closest meaning to the underlined part.

1. Let’s put off that meeting to next Monday.

a. postpone b. arrange c. start d. decide

1. They turned down my suggestion, which made me upset.

a. refused b. agreed c. accepted d. supposed

1. I ran into my cousin, Peter, when I was on the way to school yesterday,

a. phoned b. met c. called d. waved

1. Peter went through the test paper and crossed out two wrong answers.

a. handed / chose c. finished / wrote

b. dropped / discovered d. read carefully / deleted

c. ends

d. starts

1. The party kicks off at 8 o’clock, a. prepares b. cancels

MODULE 6 31

1. What time will the train get in?

a. brake b. run c. arrive d. leave

1. I sometimes drop off on the sofa.

a. sleep b. drink c. eat d. buy

1. Professor Pike promised to talk over the exam after he returned the results,

a. discuss b. omit c. end d. begin

1. My family was able to get by on very little money when I was young,

a. survive b. depend c. spend d. earn

1. Mr. Pike was very good at making up stories for his children.

a. telling b. reading c. inventing d. remembering

1. I can put you up at my flat if you like.

a. give you a lift to home b. give you somewhere to sleep

c. give you a meal d. give you some work to do

1. My boss is always picking on me these days.

a. asking me to do things b. helping me

c. criticizing me d. playing games with me

1. None of these countries has found a way to get around the problem of inflation,

a. create b. invent c. cause d. overcome

1. I have been snowed under at work recently.

) a. The weather has been very bad b. I have been very busy with my work c. It has been very cold in the office d. My boss has been causing problems

1. When he came to, his wallet and bike were nowhere to be found,

a. arrived home b. climbed the stairs

c. went to work d. recover consciousness

1. Carlos hung up on his sister because he was so tired of listening to her whining on the phone.

a. visited b. ended a phone call c. came to see d. reprimanded

1. The company has been taking on new staff, including part-time workers,

a. sacking b. limiting c. employing d. dismissing

1. Terri was able to catch on to the most complex problems in calculus before anyone else.

a. realize b. change c. invent d. submit

1. Let me explain to you how the things came about.

a. ended b. happened c. blew d. are solved

1. We are becoming older" and older as years go by.

a. stop b. change c. come d. pass

MODULE 7

l r 1

CONJUNCTIONS **(Liên từ)**

Liên từ (conjunction) là từ được dùng để nối các từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề hoặc câu. Có hai loại liên từ:

1. Liên từ kết hợp (coordinating conjunctions) nối từ, cụm từ hoặc

mệnh đề độc lập có cùng chức năng ngữ pháp: and (và), but (nhưng), or (hoặc là), nor (củng không), so (vì vậy), yet (tuy nhiên), for (vì)

Ví du: Tom and Mary are my friends. (Tom và Mary là bạn của tôi.) James likes tea, but Mary likes coffee.

(James thích trà nhưng Mary thích cà phê.)

Is the baby male or female? (Đứa bé là con trai hay con gái.)

He cannot see, nor can he hear.

(Anh ấy không thấy, củng không thể nghe.)

There is no food left, so I have to go shopping.

(Không còn thức ăn nên tôi phải đi mua.)

The new method is simple, yet effective.

(Phương pháp mới đơn giản, nhưng hiệu quả.)

I told her to leave, for I was very tired.

(Tôi bảo cô ta di vì tôi rất mệt.)

* Liên từ tương quan (correlative conjunctions): both . . . and (cả ... và), not only . . . but also (không những ... mà còn), either ... or (hoặc ... hoặc). neither . . . nor (không ... củng không), whether ... or (có ... hay)

Ví du: Both Tom and John are my best friends.

(Cả Tom và John dều là bạn tốt của tôi.)

He can not only play the piano but also sing well.

(Anh ấy không những biết chơi đàn dương cầm mà còn hát rất hay.) Either you or I will come to help him.

(Hoặc bạn hoặc tôi sẽ đến giúp anh ấy.)

Peter neither spoke nor did anything.

(Peter không nói cùng không làm gì cả.)

I have not decided whether to travel aboard or buy a new car. (Tôi chưa quyết định là đi du lịch nước ngoài hay mua xe hơi mới.,

* Một số trạng từ (conjunctive adverbs) được dùng như một từ nối để nối hai mệnh đề hoặc câu độc lập: hence (do đó), however (tuy nhiên), fur­thermore (hơn nữa), moreover (hơn nữa), therefore (vì vậy), nevertheless (tuy nhiên), meanwhile (trong khi đó), otherwise (nếu không thì), conse­quently (vì vậy, cho nên)

Ví du: I had better write it down, otherwise I will forget it.

(Tôi nên viết lại, nếu không tôi sẽ quèn.)

The whole report is badly written. Moreover, it is inaccurate. (Bản báo cáo viết rất tệ. Hơn thế nữa nó khống chính xác.)

1. Liên từ phụ thuộc (subordinating conjunctions) nối mệnh đề phi (subordinate clause) với mệnh đề chính (main clause): after, before, since when, whenever, while, until, till, as, where, wherever, because, so that in order that, although, though, even though, even if, if, unless, in case provided / providing that, supposed/ suppsoing that, as if, as though that. (Xem phần Adverb clauses, That clauses và Conditional sentences Vi du: I’ll phone you when I arrive. (Khi đến nơi tôi sẽ gọi cho anh.)

He told me that he loved me. (Anh ấy nói rằng anh ấy yêu tôi.)

MODULE 7 8'

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose ay b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. Bill wants to enter Oxford University he has some trouble meet­

ing the academic requirements.

a. and but c. as d. so

1. John usually spent his summer studying basic math, writing,

reading comprehension.

a. nor b. but c. as d. and

1. I do not like football, my brother can play football very well.

a. as b. and c. while d. or

1. It is hard to say whether Hemingway Fitzgerald is the more

interesting cultural icon of his day.

a. or b. and c. not d. but

1. Hartford is a rich city, suffers from many symptoms of urban blight.

a. yet b. however c. so d. and

1. You need to work harder; , you’ll get fired.

a. otherwise b. moreover c. instead d. however

1. There were not enough beds I had to sleep on the floor.

a. while b. nor c. but d. so

1. You can study hard for this exam you can fail.

a. however b. yet c. and d. or

1. He is a very weak president; , most people support him.

a. otherwise b. therefore c. nevertheless d. but

1. There was no alcohol in the flat, any tobacco.

a. or b. nor c. but d. and

1. This is a useful rule, difficult to remember.

a. so b. but c. and d. or

1. The first two services are free, the third costs £35.00.

a. while b. when c. since d. as

1. knowledge can be acquired from books, skills must be learned

through practice.

a. Since b. And c. But d. Whereas

1. She could not speak, could she understand anything we said.

a. when b. as c. or d. nor

1. She not only works harc^ has a good relationship with all her workmates.

a. since b. as Q. but also d. so

1. Whether you win this race lose it doesn’t matter as long as you do your best.

a. nor b. but èi or d. and

1. We were sitting, I remember, in a riverside restaurant.

\*ầ. whereas "b. as c. and d. yet

1. We wanted to go to the beach; , it started to rain and we stayed at home.

a. however b. moreover c. yet d. consequently

1. Forgive my asking, you’re not very happy, are you?

a. but b. and c. so d. as

1. Wear your clothes you want.

a. but b. so c. and d. however

1. Cars have become much more complicated. , mechanics need more

training than in the past.

a. Therefore b. So that c. Because d. For

1. He did not slow down drove even faster.

a. nor b. and c. but d. because

1. Doctors’ salaries have risen substantially, nurses’ pay actually has not.

a. or b. so c. and d. whereas

1. I have not been asked to resign, do I intend to do so.

a. or b. nor c. as d. since

1. He was wearing glasses no one could see his face clearly.

à. and b. so as c. but also <L so that

1. There was snow everywhere, the shape of things was difficult to identify.

a. so b. however c. as d. or

1. I couldn’t use the pay phone, I didn’t have any coins with me.

a. yet b. despite c. for d. even though

1. I have earned my own living I was seven, doing all kinds of jobs.

a. whereas b. while c. since d. whenever

1. My present job is badly paid I think I will look for another better one.

a. or b. so c. nor d. however

1. Write the answers down you do not forget them.

a. than b. as c. if d. so that

1. he was the most prominent candidate, he was not chosen.

a. Though b. Because c. As d. Since

1. Neither Mrs. Rose Mrs. Wood was available for conference yesterday.

a. nor b. or c. but d. so

1. We do not know he will come.

a. than b. but c. when d. whereas

1. My sister broke her leg in two places. , she had to wear a cast and

use crutches for three months

a. Nevertheless b. Consequently c. For that d. Moreover

1. I do not know everybody will approve of my suggestions or not.

a. only if b. when c. if d. whether

1. The visitors complained about the heat, they continued to play golf.

a. yet b. and c. because d. since

1. The lecture was very boring I had left the hall before it finished.

a. because b. but c. so d. so that

1. Either my friend I am going to help you with the work.

a. and b. or c. nor d. yet

1. Let’s ask our teacher how to solve this problem we can’t agree on the answer.

a. so b. though c. for d. since

1. John thought he had a good chance to get the job, his father was

the manager’s friend.

a. since b. though c. as d. for

MODULE 7 39

1. Do it you want.

a. however b. so c. so that d. for

1. The country is famous for the beauty of its landscape the hospitality\*

of its people.

a. thus b. since c. otherwise d. and

**MODULE 8**

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 43. Did you go out | stay at home? |  |
| a. and | b. or c. as | d. so that |
| 44. They tried hard | did not succeed. |  |
| a. but | b. so c. while | d. whereas |
| 45. They got lost | they forgot to take the map | with them. |
| a. when | b. and c. because | d. or |
| 46. I did not see it, | did they. |  |
| a. and | b. nor c. so | d. but |
| 47. we miss | the last bus, we will walk home. |  |
| a. Wherever | b. When c. As if | d. If |
| 48. He kept reading | he fell asleep. |  |
| a. until | b. as c. for | d. and |
| 49. The police searched the region carefully thev found nothing. | | |
| a. whereas | b. nor c. but | d. as if |
| 50. We open the window fresh air could blow into the room. | | |
| a. for | b. so that c. not only | d. because |

**SUBJECT - VERB AGREEMENT  
*(Sự tương hợp giữa chủ từ và động từ)***

Singular subject + Singular verb \*

1.

2.

3.

Plural subject + Plural verb

Vi du: Tom is very nice. (Tom rất tử tế.)

Milk is good for our health. (Sừa tốt cho sức khỏe.)

The students are studying English. (Các sinh viên đang học tiếng Anh) Noun + and + Noun + Plural verb (khi các danh từ đề cập đến người/ vật khác nhau)

Noun + and + Noun + Singular verb (khi các danh từ đề cập đến cùng

một người/ vật)

Ví du: The manager and the secretary have come.

(Giám đốc và thư ký đã đến.)

Bread and eggs is my favourite dish.

(Bánh mì trứng là món tôi thích nhất.)

Every/ Each + Singular noun + and + Every / Each + Singular noun + Singular verb

Vi du: Every teacher and every student has their own work.

(Mỗi giáo viển và mỗi sinh viên đều có công việc riêng của mình.)

**Nouni** + with/ along with! together with/ in addition to/ **05 u>e/z 05/** accompanied by + **Nouii2 + Verb (nouni)**

Vi du: The students in addition to the teacher are all devoted to the research. (Các sinh viên và thầy giáo của họ đều hết lòng với việc nghiên cứu.)

5.

Nouni + **or! nor** + N**011112** + Verb (noun2)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Either | + Nouni + | or + Noun2 + Verb (noun2) |
| Neither |  | nor |
| Not only |  | but also |

Ví du: Not only Julie but also all of the grandchildren want to visit their grandparents.

*(Không những Julie mà mấy dứa cháu củng muốn đến thăm ông bà.)* Either you or I am right. *(Cả anh và tôi đều dứng.)*

**6**.

7.

8.

**Each / Every / One Singular Noun Neither / Either Of + Plural Noun**

Vi du: Every seat has a number. (Mỗi ghế đều có số.)

Neither of my sisters likes films. *(Không người chị nào của tôi thích phim ảnh.)*

**Everyone/ Everything/ Someone/ Something/ Anyone/ Anything/ Nobody/ Nothing/... + Singular verb**

Vi du: Nobody is here. (Không ai ở dây.)

**+ Singular verb**

9.

**The number of** **+ Plural noun + Singular verb A number of** **+ Plural noun + Plural verb**

Vi du: The number of students in my class is thirty.

*(Số học sinh trong lớp tôi là 30.)*

A number of my students are keen on learning English.

*(Một số học sinh trong lớp tôi thích học tiếng Anh.)*

**All/ Some/ Plenty/ None/ Half x ^ + Singular Noun + Singular Verb Most/ A lot/ Percentage ^ Plural Noun + Plural Verb**

Vi du: One third of the population is unemployed.

*(Một phần ba dân số bị thất nghiệp.)*

One third of the villagers are unemployed.

*(Một phần ba dân làng bị thất nghiệp.)*

1. There + BE + Noun

**t I**

Ví du: There are two sides to every problem. (Mọi vấn dề đều có hai mặt.) There is a picture on the wall. (Có một bức tranh trên tường.)

1. Collective Noun + ^Singular verb (xem như một đơn vị)

(family, team, staff,...) Plural verb (chỉ từng cá nhân tạo nên tập thể)

Ví du: Our company has debated these questions carefully.

(Công ty của chúng tối thảo luận vấn dề rất cẩn thận)

The company lead very different lives in private.

(Mỗi người ở công ty của chúng tôi có cuộc sống riêng tư khác nhau.)

1. People/ Police/ Cattle/ Poultry/ The + adjective + Plural verb

MODULE 8 41

Ví du: The police are searching to find the thieves.

(Cảnh sát đang lục soát tìm những tên trộm.)

The poor need help. (Người nghèo cần được giúp đờ.)

1. Một số danh từ có dạng số nhiều nhưng có nghĩa số ít: maths, physics, economics, linguistics,.../ measles, mumps, rickets,.../ bỉlỉards, darts,.../ the Philippines, the United States,.../ news + Singular verb

Vi du: Mathematics is divided into branches. (Toán học được chia làm

nhiều ngành.)

Rickets is common in some developing countries.

(Bệnh còi xương phổ biến ở một số nước đang phát triền.)

1. Time (thời gian) Ị Money (tiền) / Distance (Khoảng cách) / Measure­ment (đo lường) / Titles (tựa đề) + Singular verb

Ví du: “To build a fire” was written by Jack London.

(Tác phẩm “To build a fire” do Jack London viết.)

Ten dollars is a high price to pay. (10 dollars là một giá cao.)

Five years is the maximum sentence of that offence.

(5 năm là mức án cao nhất cho tội đó.)

1. Động từ số ít (singular verb) thường được dùng sau số thập phân, phân số và cụm từ chỉ số lượng và sự đo lường.

Ví du: Three quarters of a ton is too much. (3/4 tấn là quá nhiều.) Nhưng động từ số nhiều (plural verb) được dùng khi nói về số lượng người hoặc vật.

Ví du: A third of the students are from abroad.

*(1/3* số học sinh đến từ các nước khác.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. Learning foreign languages a lot of time.

a. require b. requires c. have required d. are requiring

1. Meeting you a good chance.

a. is b. are c. were d. have been

1. Women not well-treated in former days.

a. is b. are c. were d. was

1. Beautiful white teeth to make our smile more attractive.

a. help b. helps c. is helping d. was helping

1. Children good care from their parents.

a. need b. needs c. are needing d. is needing

1. Look! The cattle on the meadow.

a. has grazed b. have grazed c. is grazing d. are grazing

1. Many people claim that health more important than wealth.

a. are b. is c. have been d. has been

1. The fishing boat sank but luckily all the crew able to save themselves.

a. have been b. is c. are d. were

to the possession of a large amount of money, property, or

1. Wealth

other valuable things, a. refer b. are referring c. is referring d. refers

1. The news from the destroyed villages so bad.

a. was

1. Measles

a. have

1. Rickets

a. is

b. were c. are d. have been

a dangerous disease for pregnant women.

b. are c. is d. were

popular among some countries in Africa.

b. are c. were d. have been

1. Of all high school courses, mathematics to be difficult.

a. consider b. have considered c. are considered d. is considered

1. Economics at high school.

a. is not taught b. are not taught c. do not teach d. does not teach

1. John’s information us a lot.

a. help

1. The furniture \_ a. are
2. The bad news a. make

b. has helped c. have helped d. were helping

so expensive that we had to save for three months to buy it. b. is c. was d. were

her so shocked that she falls unconscious.

have made

b. has made c. have made d. are making

1. The Philippines 7,107 islands in the western Pacific Ocean.

a. comprises b. comprise c. is comprising d. are comprising

1. The Netherlands a parliamentary democratic constitutional mon­

archy, located in Western Europe.

a. is b. are c. has been d. have been

1. There a book, a pen, and three pencils on the table.

a. is b. are c. were d. has

1. There three pencils, a pen, and a book on the table.

a. is b. are c. was d. have

1. Four times four divided by two eight.

makes b. make c. have made d. are making

\_ in the battle last year.

c. was lost d. were lost

by fire last night.

a. destroys b. destroy c. was destroyed d. were destroyed

1. Forty percent of the students in favor of changing the policy.

a. is b. are c. has been d. was

1. The number of students attending the lecture yesterday one hundred

and twenty-two.

a. is b. are c. was d: were

1. Four years a required time for a student to complete his university education.

a. is b. are c. has been d. were

1. One thousand dollars

a. is b. are

1. Two-fifths of the troops

a. have lost b. loses

1. Two-ilfths of the vineyard

\_ really a large sum of money for me.

c. were d. have been

29. The secretary and cashier of our club Ms. Young.

a. is b. are c. were d. have been

c. were

MODULE 8 43

1. Each student and each teacher ready for the school activities.

a. are b. is c. have been d. were

1. Each and every student and instructor in this institute for a new

facility by next year.

a. hope b. hopes c. are hoping d. were hoped

1. Rice and chicken, my favorite dish, by my mother.

a. has usually cooked b. have usually been cooked

c. are usually cooked d. is usually cooked

1. The members and the chairman together recently.

a. meets b. are just meeting c. have just met d. has just met

1. My sisters and Susan friends since they met together at the party.

a. have become b. has become c. is becoming d. comes

1. My friends and my mother each other.

a. not likes b. does not like c. is not liking d. do not like

1. Your pair of trousers in the closet.

a. is b. are c. were d. have been

1. I think the behaviors of that young man not acceptable.

a. is b. are c. was d. has been

1. The way of life in small villages far from big cities mostly quiet

because there few people.

a. is / is b. are / are c. is / are d. are / is

1. Either my father or my brothers the house.

a. sells b. has sold c. are going to sell d. is selling

1. Neither the employees nor the boss the solution.

a. find b. have found c. has found d. are finding

1. John or you our grandfather next weekend.

a. visits b. is going to visit c. are going to visit d. visited

1. Not only the students but also their instructor to the principal’s office.

a. is calling b. call c. have been called d. has been called

1. Michael, along with his brothers and support team, many major

cities around the world every year.

a. visits b. visit c. is visiting d. are visiting

1. Kara, together with her teammates, hands with opponents on the

basketball court.

a. shake b. is shaking c. are shaking d. have shaken

1. Peter, as well as my two brothers, football in the school yard every afternoon.

a. often plays b. often play c. plays often d. have often played

1. Most of the milk bad except three bottles of milk which

still in the refrigerator.

a. have gone / are b. has gone / is c. have gone / is d. has gone / are

1. It not the faculty members but the president who this issue.

a. was / decide b. is / decides c. was / have decided d. is / decide

1. The department members, but not the chairman, not to work on

Valentine’s Day.

a. wants b. want c. is wanting d. are wanting

1. Anyone who wants to pursue higher education to pass entrance exams.
2. has b. have c. is having d. are having
3. More than one student to do those mathematic puzzles which

by the teacher last week.

1. has tried / was given b. have tried / were given

c. has tried / were given d. have tried / was given

**MODULE 9**

TENSES **(Thì)**

1. Simple present (Hiện tại đơn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

1. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

I / We / You / They + bare infinitive verb **He / She / It + verb-s/es**

* Bare infinitive verb: động từ nguyên mẫu không to

, \* Thêm es vào các động từ tận cùng là 0, s, SH, CH, X, z.

Ví du: I like football. (Tôi thích bóng đá.)

John watches TV every night. *(*Tối nào John củng xem tivi.)

1. Thể phủ định (Negative)

I / We / You / They + do not (don’t) + bare infinitive verb  
**He / She / It + does not (doesn’t) + bare infinitive verb**

Vi du: We do not/ don’t go to school on Sundays.

(Chúng tôi không đi học vào ngày Chủ nhật.)

1. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Do + I / we / you / they + bare infinitive verb?

Does + he / she / it + bare infinitive verb?

Vi du: Do they live near here? (Họ sống gần đây phải không?)

• Cách chia động từ TO BE (thì, ỉà)

1. Thể khẳng định

I am ... We / You / They are ... He / She / It is ...

Ví du: I am a student. (Tôi là học sinh.)

1. Thể phủ định

I am not ... We / You / They are not... He / She / It is not...

Ví du: I am not a student. (Tôi không phải là học sinh.)

* Rút gọn: are not = aren’t is not = isn’t

1. Thể nghi vấn

Am I ...? Are we / you / they ...? Is he / she / it...?

Vi du: Are you a student? (Có phải bạn là học sinh không?)

MODULE 9 45

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Hiện tại đơn được dùng để diễn đạt:

1. Một sự thật hiển nhiên, chân lý.

Ví du: It always rains in November. (Trời luôn mưa vào tháng Mười Một.) Water is necessary for species. (Nước cần thiết cho muôn loài.)

1. Thói quen, cảm giác, nhận thức hoặc tình trạng cố định ở hiện tại.

Ví du: I usually listen to the radio at night. (Tôi thường nghe radio vào han đêm.)

Most teenagers like films. (Phần lớn thanh thiếu niên yêu thích phim ảnh.)

My sister lives near Dover. (Chị tôi sống gần Dover.)

- Khi diễn tả thói quen (hành động lặp đi lặp lại ở hiện tại), thì hiện tại thường được dùng với các trạng từ năng diễn (Adverbs of Frequency).

1. Thời khóa biểu, chương trình, kế hoạch theo thời gian cố định.

Ví du: His train arrives at 7:30. (Chuyên tàu của anh ấy đến lúc 7:30.) I start my new job tomorrow. (Ngày mai tôi sẽ bắt đầu công việc mới.)

2. Present continuous (Hiện tại tiếp diễn)

1. Cấu trúc (Form)
2. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + am / is / are + V-ing

Vi du: We are learning English. (Chúng tôi đang học tiếng Anh.)

1. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + am not / is not / are not + V-ing

Vi du: He is not/ isn’t working now. (Hiện giờ anh ấy không làm việc.)

1. Thể nghi vấn

Am / Is / Are + subject + V-ing?

Ví du: Are you listening to music? (Bạn đang nghe nhạc phải không?)

1. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt:

1. Sự việc đang diễn ra ngay lúc nói, hoặc đang diễn ra ở hiện tại nhưng không nhất thiết vào lúc đang nói. Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các trạng từ, trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian: now (bây giờ), at the moment ((bây giờ), right now (ngay bây gỉờ)y at present (hiện tại)

Ví du: Listen! Mary is sỉngỉnẹ. (Nghe kìa! Mary dang hát.)

Are you preparing for the exam? (Bạn đang chuẩn bị cho kỳ thi phải không?)

1. Sự việc mang tính tạm thời.

Ví du: Ms Young works at the hospital, but today she is staying at home to look after her sick baby. (Cô Young làm việc ở bệnh viện, nhưng hôm nay cô ẩy ở nhà chăm sóc con cô ấy bị bệnh.)

1. Sự việc xảy ra trong tương lai gần - một sự sắp xếp hoặc một kế hoạch đã định. Cách dùng này luôn được dùng với trạng từ chỉ thời gian tương lai (để tránh nhầm lẫn với hành động đang xảy ra).

Ví du: We are coming to see our grandfather tomorrow.

(Ngày mai chúng tôi sẽ đến thăm ồng bà.)

1. Sự việc thường xuyên xảy ra gây bực mình, khó chịu cho người nói. Dùng với always (luôn luôn), continually (luôn), constantly (liên tục).

Ví du: She is always complaining about her work.

(Cô ấy cứ phàn nàn về công việc của mình mãi.)

\* Lưu ý: Không dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn với các động từ trạng thái (stative verbs): know, believe, understand, belong, need, hate, love, like, want, hear, see, smell, sound, have, wish, seem, taste, own, remember, for­get,... . Dùng thì hiện tại đơn (simple present) với các động từ này.

3. Present perfect (Hiện tại hoàn thành)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

1. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  | I / We / You / They + have + past participle He / She / It + has + past participle |
| Ví du: I have broken mv glasses. (Tôi đã bi vỡ kính.) b. Thể phủ định (Negative) | |
|  | Subject + have/ has not + past participle |
| \* Rút gọn: Ví du: SI c. Thể ngh] | have not = haven’t has not = hasn’t le hasn’t phoned. (Cô ấy dã không gọi điện.) i vấn (Interrogative) |
| Have/ Has + subject + past participle? |

Ví du: Have you finished? (Bạn đã xong chưa?)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành được dùng để diễn đạt:

1. Sự việc vừa mới xảy ra.

Ví du: John has just come back from London. (John vừa từ Luân Đòn về.)

1. Sự việc đã xảy ra trong quá khứ khi người nói không biết rõ hoặc không muốn đề cập đến thời gian chính xác.

Ví du: I have visited Hanoi. (Tôi dã đi tham quan Hà Nội.)

Have you ever been to Vietnam? (Bạn đã bao giờ đến Việt Nam chưa?)

1. Sự việc xảy ra nhiều lần trong quá khứ và còn có thể được lặp lại ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ví du: I have read that book three times. (Tòi đã đọc quyển sách dó 3 lần.) My sister is a writer. She has written a lot of short stories.

(Chị tôi là nhà văn. Chị ấy đã sáng tác nhiều truyện ngán.)

1. Sự việc xảy ra trong quá khứ còn kéo dài hoặc có ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại hay tương lai.

MODULE 9 47

Ví du: John has worked here for three years. (John đã làm việc ở đây được 3 năm.) -> hiện John vẫn còn đang làm việc ở đây He has broken his leg, so he can’t play tennis. (Anil ấy hi gãy chân, nên anh ấy không chơi tennis được.) c. Các phó từ thường đi kèm với thì hiện tại hoàn thành: just, recently, lately (vừa mới, gần đây)’, already (rồi)] never (không bao giờ, chưa bao giờ)', ever (đã từng)’, before (trước đây)’, for + khoảng thời gian (trong)’, since + mốc thời gian (từ)’, so far, until now, up to now, up to present (cho đến nay).

4. Present perfect continuous (Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

1. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + have/ has + been + V-ing

Ví du: I have been thinking about you. (Tôi cứ nghi về anh suốt.)

1. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + have/ has not + been + V-ing

Vi du: Jane hasn’t been studying very well recently.

(Gần đáy Jane học hành không được tốt lắm.)

1. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Have/ Has + subject + been + V-ing?

Vi du: Have you been waiting long? (Bạn đợi có lâu không?)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diền được dùng để diễn đạt:

1. Sự việc xảy ra trong quá khứ kéo dài liên tục đến hiện tại hoặc tương lai, nhấn mạnh tính liên tục, kéo dài của sự việc.

Ví du: He has been working for ten hours without rest.

(Ảnh ấy dã làm việc suốt 10 tiếng không nghỉ.)

1. Sự việc vừa mới chấm dứt và có kết quả ở hiện tại.

Ví du: I must go and wash. I’ve been gardening.

(Tôi phải đi tắm đây. Tôi vừa mới làm vườn xong.)

5. Simple past (Quá khứ đon)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + verb (past tense)

Vi du: We met John yesterday. (Chúng tôi đã gặp John hôm qua.) b. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + did not (didn’t) + bare infinitive verb

Vi du: He didn’t say anything about it.

(Anh ấy đủ không nổi gì về việc đó.)

Did + subject + bare infinitive verb?

Vi du: Did they leave here? (Họ dã rời khỏi dây rồi phải không?)

• Cách chia động từ TO BE (thì, là)

1. Thể khẳng định

I / He / She / It was... We / You / They were...

Vi du: He was here yesterday. (Hôm qua anh ấy dã ở dây.)

1. Thể phủ định

I / He / She / It was not ... We / You / They were not ...

\* Rút gọn: was not = wasn’t were not = weren’t

Vi du: We were not/ weren’t in favour of his idea.

(Chúng tôi dã không ủng hộ ý kiến của anh ấy.)

1. Thế nghi vấn

Was I / he / she / it...? Were we / you / they...?

Vi du: Were they nice to you? (Họ đã tử tế với bạn phải không?)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Quá khứ đơn được dùng để diễn đạt:

1. Sự việc đã xảy ra và chấm dứt trong quá khứ, biết rõ thời gian.

Ví du: He worked here three years ago.

(Cách đây ba năm anh ấy đà làm việc ở đây.)

1. Thói quen, tình cảm, sở thích, nhận thức ở quá khứ.

Ví du: I often went for a walk when I lived in the countryside.

(Khi sống ở thôn quê, tôi thường di dạo.)

1. Sự việc đã xảy ra suốt một khoảng thời gian trong quá khứ, nhung nay đã hoàn toàn chấm dứt.

Ví du: Mozart wrote more than 600 pieces of music.

(Mozart đã sáng tác hơn 600 bản nhạc.)

He worked here for two years. (Anh ấy đã làm việc ở đây hai năm.) -» hiện anh ấy không còn làm ở đây nừa

1. Một chuồi sự việc nối tiếp nhau trong quá khứ.

Ví du: Yesterday morning, John got up at 7 o’clock, had breakfast, and went to work. (Sáng hôm qua, John thức dậy lúc 7 giờ, ăn sáng rồi đi làm.)

6. Past continuous (Quá khứ tiếp diễn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

a. Thế khẳng định (Affirmative)

**Subject + was / were + V-ing**

Vi du: We were working on the computer at 3 p.m yesterday.

(Luc 3 giờ chiều hôm qua chúng tôi đang làm việc trên máy tính.)

MODULES 49

1. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + was not / were not + V-ing

Vi du: He wasn’t studying at that time. (Vào lúc đó anh ấy không học.)

1. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Was / Were + subject + V-ing?

Vi du: Were you listening to music last night?

(Có phải tối hôm qua bạn đang nghe nhạc không?)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt:

1. Sự việc đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm cụ thể trong quá khứ.

Ví du: What were you doing at 7 o’clock last night? ~ I was watching TV. (Lúc 7 giờ tối qua bạn đang làm gì? ~ Tôi đang xem TV.)

1. Sự việc xảy ra và kéo dài một thời gian ở quá khứ.

Ví du: Yesterday, he was working in the laboratory all the afternoon.

(Suốt cả chiều hôm qua õng ấy đã làm việc trong phòng thí nghiệm.)

1. Sự việc đang diễn ra trong quá khứ thì có một sự việc khác xảy đến (dùng past continuous cho hành động kéo dài, dùng past simple cho hành động xảy đến).

Ví du: When I came yesterday, they were having dinner.

(Hôm qua khi tôi đến, họ đang ăn tối.)

1. Hai hành động xảy ra đồng thời tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ. Ví du: Yesterday, he was reading a newspaper while his wife was cook­ing in the kitchen. (Hôm qua, anh ấy đọc báo trong khi vợ anh ấy nấu ăn trong bếp.)
2. Sự việc xảy ra thường xuyên trong quá khứ gây bực mình, phiền toái.

Ví du: She was always boasting about her work when she worked here.

(Khi còn làm việc ở đây cô ấy cứ khoác lác mãi về công việc của mình.)

7. Past perfect (Quá khứ hoàn thành)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

1. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + had + past participle

Ví du: I had forgotten. (Tôi quèn mất.)

1. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + had not (hadn’t) + past participle

VI du: It hadn’t rained for weeks. (Trời đả không mưa hàng tuần rồi.)

1. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Had + subject + past participle?

Vi du: Where had she been? (Cô ấy đã ở đâu vậy?)

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Quá khứ hoàn thành được dùng đế diễn đạt sự việc xảy ra, kéo dài và hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ, hay trước một sự việc khác trong quá khứ (dùng thì quá khứ đơn cho sự việc xảy ra sau). Ví du: John had finished his work before lunch time.

(Anh ấy đã xong việc trước giờ ăn trưa.)

They had lived here for three years before they moved to the countryside. (Trước khi về quê, họ dã sống ở dây ba năm.)

1. Past perfect continuous (Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn)
2. Cấu trúc (Form)
3. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + had + been + V-ing

Vi du: He had been working very hard. (Anh *ấy* dã làm việc rất vất vả.)

1. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + had not (hadn’t) + been + V-ing

Vi du: They hadn’t been listening. (Họ đã không lắng nghe.)

1. Thể nghi vân (Interrogative)

Had + subject + been + V-ing?

Vi du: Had it been raining? (Trời dã mita phải không?)

1. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Quá khứ hoàn thảnh tiếp diễn được dùng giống thì quá khứ hoàn thành nhưng nhấn mạnh tính liên tục, kéo dài của sự việc.

Ví du: At that time we had been living in the caravan for about six months. (Đến lúc đó thì chúng tôi dã sống trong xe moóc được khoảng 6 tháng.)

1. Simple Future (Tương lai dơn)

A. Câu trúc (Form)

1. Thế khảng định (Affirmative)

I / We + will / shall (’ll) + bare infinitive verb  
**You / They / He / She / It + will (’ll) + bare infinitive verb**

Ví du: I will be/ I’ll be away some days. (Tôi sc đi vắng vài ngày.)

1. Thể phủ định (Negative)

**Subject + will / shall not + bare infinitive verb**

\* Rút gọn: will not = won’t shall not = shan’t

Vi du: We won’t/ shan’t work overtime next week.

(Tuần tới chúng tôi sẽ không làm thèm giờ.)

1. Thế nghi vấn (Interrogative)

Will / Shall + subject + bare infinitive verb?

Vi du: Will they be here next week? (Họ sẽ đến đây vào tuần tới phải không?)

MODULE 9 51

B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì tượng lai đơn được dùng để diễn đạt:

1. Sự việc, hành động sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

Ví du: My son will enter university next year. (Năm sau con trai tôi sẽ vào đại học.)

Cách dùng này thường được dùng với các trạng từ chỉ thời gian tương lai: tomorrow (ngày mai), someday (một ngày nào dó), next week/ month/ year/... (tuần Ị tháng Ị năm Ị... tới), soon (chẳng bao lâu).

1. Lời hứa, lời đe dọa, lời đề nghị, lời mời, lời gợi ý, dự đoán hoặc một quyết định tức thì.

Ví du: Don’t worry. I will help you. (Đừng lo. Tôi sẽ giúp bạn.)

I will send you out if you keep talking.

(Tôi sẽ đuổi bạn ra ngoài nếu bạn cứ nói chuyện.)

Will you help me with this, please? (Vui Lòng giúp tôi việc này với.) Shall we have dinner out tonight? (Tối nay chúng ta ra ngoài ăn tối nhé.)

I think everything will be all right. (Tôi cho là mọi chuyện sẽ tốt dẹp.) It’s twenty five dollars. ~OK. I’ll buy it. (Cái dó 25 dôla. ~ Được

rồi, tôi sẽ mua nó.)

10. Future continuous (Tương lai tiếp diễn)

1. Cấu trúc (Form)
2. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + will / shall + be + V-ing

Vi du: Mary will be working all day tomorrow. (Ngày mai Mary sẽ làm việc suốt ngày.)

1. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + will / shall + not + be + V-ing

Vi du: He will not be studying at this time tomorrow.

(Vào giờ này ngày mai anh ấy sẽ không dang học.)

1. Thể nghi vấn

Will / Shall + subject + be + V-ing?

Vi du: Will you be waiting for me when I come? (Bạn sẽ chờ đến khi tôi đến phải không?)

1. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Tương lai tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn đạt sự việc sẽ đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví du: What will you be doing at 9 o’clock tomorrow morning?

(Bạn sẽ đang làm gì vào lúc 9 giờ sáng mai?)

I will be preparing for my coming exam.

(Tôi sẽ đang chuẩn bị cho kỳ thi sắp tới.)

1. Future perfect (Tương lai hoàn thảnh)
2. Cấu trúc (Form)
3. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)

Subject + will / shall + have + past participle

1. Thể phủ định (Negative)

Subject + will/ shall not + have + past participle

1. Thể nghi vấn (Interrogative) <

Will / Shall + subject + have + past participle?

1. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Tương lai hoàn thành được dùng để diễn đạt sự việc đã xảy ra, kéo dài và hoàn tất trước một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai, hay trước một sự việc tương lai khác (dùng thì hiện tại đơn cho sự việc xảy ra sau).

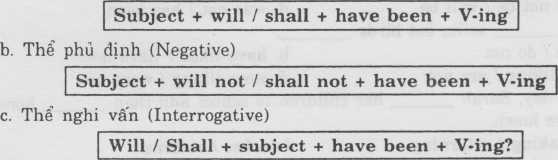
Ví du: The secretary will have written the report before the meeting. (Thư ký sẽ viết xong bản báo cáo trước buổi họp.)

By the time he moves to London next month, he will have learned English for three years. (Khi chuyển đến Luân Đôn vào tháng tới thì anh ấy sẽ (đã) học tiếng Anh được ba năm.)

1. Future perfect continuous (Tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn)

A. Cấu trúc (Form)

a. Thể khẳng định (Affirmative)



B. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì Tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diền được dùng giống thì tương lai hoàn thành nhưng nhấn mạnh tính liên tục, kéo dài của sự việc.

Ví du: They will have been driving for 300 miles by noon.

(Tới giữa trưa họ sẽ (đã) lái xe đi được 300 dặm.)

1. Near Future (Tương lai gần]
2. Câu trúc (Form)

**Subject + be (am/is/are) + going to + V (bare-inf.)**

1. Cách dùng (Usage)

Thì tương lai gần được dùng để diễn đạt:

a. Dự định sẽ được thực hiện trong tương lai gần, hoặc một quyết định

sẵn có.

MODULE 9 53

Ví du: I cannot go with you. I am going to help my mother with some household chores. (Tôi không đi với bạn được. Tôi định sẽ giúp mẹ làm việc nhà.)

b. Dự đoán dựa vào cơ sở hay tình huống hiện tại.

Ví du: It is so cloudy. I think it is going to rain.

(Trời nhiều mây quá. Tôi nghĩ trời sắp mưa.)

• Lưu ý: Không sử dụng các thì tương lai trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose ay bf c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. Water of hydrogen and oxygen.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
|  | a. is consisting | b. consists | c. | has consisted | d. will consist |
| 2. | Don’t give the chocolate to Helen. She | | | it. |  |
|  | a. hates | b. is hating | c. | has hated | d. hated |
| 3. | The Sun | us heat and light. |  |  |  |
|  | a. will give | b. is giving | c. | gives | d. has given |
| 4. | We students, so we | | to school on weekdays. | | |
|  | a. are / go often |  | b. | are / often go |  |
|  | c. are / have often | gone | d. | have been / are often going | |
| 5. | Every day, Peter | at 7 o’clock, | | breakfast, and then | |

to work at 7.30.

a. has often got / will have / go b. often gets up / has / goes

c. is often getting / having / goes d. has often got up / had / went

California in the United Kingdom. It in the US.

a. is not / is

b. has not been / is d. was not / has been

c. will not be / will be

Cats milk, but birds

7.

8.

9.

a. like / do not c. are liking / are not

b. have liked / have not d. were liking / were not her children to school and then

Every day, Sarah

home to

round.

prepare lunch.

a. is taking / returning b. takes / returns

c. has taken / returned d. will take / will return

The sun the ball of fire in the sky that the Earth

a. will be / has gone b. will be / will be going

c. is / goes d. has been / is going

1. Sally really hard for her exams this week.

a. takes b. will be taking c. is taking d. had taken

1. Many people living in Seattle because it continually.

a. are hating / is often raining c. hate / often rains

b. have hated / will often rain d. hated / was often raining in the West.

b. is rising / is setting d. will rise / will set

1. The sun in the East and

a. rises / sets c. has risen / has set

1. on the computer now?
2. Is Peter working b. Was Peter working

c. Has Peter worked d. Will Peter be working

1. Listen! Mr. Jones the piano. You noise.

a. is playing / should not make b. plays / will not make

c. has played / do not make d. played / would not make

1. Right now, Long with his friends. They the differences

between British English and American English.

a. sits / discuss b. has been sitting / will discuss

c. was sitting / was discussing d. is sitting / are discussing

1. - free this afternoon?

* No, I \_.
* What ?
* I my dentist.

1. Will you be / will not / have you done / have seen
2. Have you been / have not / will you do / will see
3. Are you / am not / do you do / see
4. Are you / am not / are you doing / am seeing
5. Listen! Someone at the door. I it.

a. knocks / answer b. has knocked / will be answering

c. was knocking / answered d. is knocking / will answer

1. Every day, John rice and vegetables for lunch, but today he

chicken soup and roast beef. Today is his brother’s wedding.

a. has / is having b. has / has had c. is having / has d. has had / has

1. It , so we can’t go to the beach.

a. had rained b. rained c. is raining d. will have rained

1. My father complete silence when he .

a. is wanting / works b. wants / is working

c. has wanted / worked d. had wanted / was working

1. Since 2003 they their son every year.

a. visited b. have visited c. visit d. will visit

1. Usually, Mr. Pile US Physics but today he ill so Mrs.

Young us.

a. teaches / is / is teaching b. has taught / is / teaches

c. is teaching / has been / teaches d. taught / was / was teaching

1. I am sorry I cannot hear what you because everybody so loudly.

a. are saying / will talk b. were saying / has talked

c. have just said / is talking d. said / was talking

1. I the same car for more than ten years. I about buying a new one.

a. have had / am thinking b. will have / think

c. had / will think d. am going to have / was thinking

1. My best friend and I each other for over fifteen years. We still

together once a week.

a. were knowing / got b. knew / have got

c. have known / get d. had known / are getting

MODULE 9 55

1. The secretary on the report for more than three hours. She hopes

she may finish it by the lunch time.

1. is working b. will be working c. has been working d. had been working
2. Please turn off the stove. The water for more than fifteen minutes.

a. is boiling b. was boiling c. has been boiling d. will be boiling

1. In the 19th century, it two or three months to cross North America

by covered wagon. The trip very rough and often dangerous.

a. took / was b. had taken / had been

c. took / had been d. had taken / was

1. My grandfather a very exciting life. When he was young, he

on the farm in the country, where there a lot of cattle and meadows.

a. has / has lived / have been b. had / lived / were

c.. was having / had lived / had been d. has had / is living / are

1. Mary on the essay for two hours now and she that she

it in one more hour.

a. is working / has hoped / can finish b. has been working / hopes / will finish

c. will have worked / hopes / finishes d. had been working / hoped / would finish

1. I there once a long time ago and back since.

a. went / have not been b. have gone / will not be

c. was going / am not d. had gone / was not

1. Those drivers for three hours when a heavy storm suddenly .

a. were driving / broke b. drove / was breaking

c. had driven / was breaking d. had been driving / broke

1. I to visit you yesterday, but you at home.

a. have come / are not b. had come / were not

c. came / were not d. was coming / have not been

1. What when the accident ?

a. have you been doing / occurs b. are you doing / will occur

c. will you be doing / has occurred d. were you doing / occurred

1. We TV when it to rain.

a. are watching / will start b. have watched / will be starting

c. had watched / was starting d. were watching / started

1. I a mystery movie on TV when the electricity out.

a. will be watching / is going b. watched / was going

c. was watching / went d. have watching / goes

1. While the doctor Mr. Jones, his son outside this morning.

a. was examining / was waiting b. will be examining / are waiting

c. had been examining / was waiting d. are examining / is going to wait

1. When the boss into the office, his secretary , and the

accountant on the phones.

1. was walking / has been typing / has been talking
2. had walked / was typing / had talked
3. walked / was typing / was talking
4. had been walking / had typed / talked

the fire alarm.

1. was listening / did not hear

39. The guard to his iPod, so he

a. had listened / was not hearing

1. listened / had not heard d. was listening / was not hearing
2. The Titanic the Atlantic when it an iceberg.
3. was crossing / struck b. crossed / was striking

c. had crossed / was striking d. crossed / had struck

1. We were late because we had some car problems. By the time we

to the train station, Susan for us for more than two hours.

1. got / had been waiting b. had got / were waiting

c. had been getting / waited d. were getting / waited

1. Mike to sit down because he all day at work.
2. had been wanting / was standing b. had wanted / stood

c. wanted / had been standing d. was wanting / had stood

1. The motorcycle to George for years before Tina it last week.

a. belonged / had bought c. had belonged / bought

b. was belonging / has bought d. had been belonging / bought you.

1. No matter what next, I

a. will happen / support

1. happened / would have supported d. is happening / have supported

this box for you.

1. carry d. am going to carry

c. happens / will support

1. Wait a minute. I

a. am carrying b. will carry

1. I he .
2. am not thinking / will come

a. do not think / will come c. have not thought / comes 47. At this time tomorrow, Peter now he \_

1. will not think / comes

for the graduation examination, so

very nervous although he hard for more than 3 years.

1. will sit / has been feeling / was learning
2. will be sitting / feels / has been learning
3. sits / will feel / is learning
4. will have sat / is feeling / learns
5. By this time next summer, you your studies and a job

a. will be completing / will find b. had completed / would find

1. have completed / find d. will have completed / found
2. By the time I to the office, the meeting without me. My

boss furious with me and I .

1. will get / begins / is / am fired
2. am getting / will begin / is going to be / will be fired
3. got / had already begun / was / was fired
4. have got / began / has been / am firing
5. By the time he next month, he for our company for ten years.

a. retires / will have been working b. will retire / has been working

c. has retired / is working d. would retired / was working

1. Look! There are a lot of clouds! It soon.

a. is going to rain b. has been raining c. will be raining d. will have rained

MODULE 9 57

1. I am busy. I think I my driving test this week.
2. have not taken b. am not going to take

c. will have not taken d. do not take

1. -1 called you last night after dinner, but you were not there. Where ?

* I overtime at the fitness center.

1. has you been / had worked b. were you / have worked

c. were you / was working d. you were / worked

1. For the last hundred years, traveling much easier and very comfort­able. Now you from New York to Los Angeles in a matter of hours.
2. becomes / fly b. had become / flew

c. will have become / will fly d. has become / can fly

1. John for his girlfriend for two hours but she . At last, he

to the movies without her.

1. has been waiting / does not come / has gone
2. will wait / has not come / will go
3. is waiting / will not come / is going
4. had been waiting / did not come / went
5. By the time we the letter, Tom for Paris.

a. receive / will have left b. had received / left

c. have received / will left d. received / leaves

1. By this time tomorrow, we on the beach of Hawaii, where we

before.

a. are going to lie / are never b. have been lying / will never be

c. will be lying / have never been d. are lying / were never

1. After the boy that the wallet full of money, he to the

police and it in.

1. will find / immediately goes / turns
2. has found / will immediately go / turn
3. was finding / went / would return
4. had found / immediately went / turned
5. Sandy TV in the living room at the moment. At this time yester­day, she television. That is all she doing the most.
6. watches / also watched / is enjoying
7. is watching / was also watching / enjoys

\* c. is going to watch / has also watched / has enjoyed

1. will be watching / had also watched / will enjoy
2. Jeans which by Levi Strauss in 1850 one of the most

popular kinds of clothes in our present time.

a. are first made / have been ' b. were first made / were

1. were first made / are d. had been made / would be
2. He his boss at this time tomorrow.

a. is meeting b. has meet c. was meeting d. will be meeting

1. - How much is this book?

* $10.



* OK. I it.

1. will take b. take c. have taken

d. took

1. What since 8 am up to now?
2. you have been doing b. have you been doing

c. have been you doing d. have been doing you

1. Computers in use since 1946.

a. are b. were c. have been d. had been

1. to Paris before?

a. Are you ever b. Have you ever been

c. Will you ever be d. Had you ever been

1. Mr. Pike lunch at home with his wife, but today he lunch

with his friends. Mrs. Pike to London since two days ago.

a. is usually having / has / went b. has usually had / has / is going

c. usually has / is having / has gone d. will have / has had / goes

1. John a lot. In fact, when he only two years old, he first

to the USA.

a. always travels / was / had flown b. has always travelled / was / flew

c. is always travelling / dad been / flew d. always travelled / was / has flown

1. Before we a computer, we that typewriter to type our assignments.

a. bought / have used b. are buying / use

c. buy / have used d. bought / had used

1. John in France, but his parents in Cologne, Germany

after living there for five years.

a. was born / had met b. had been born / met

c. has been born / meet d. is born / have met

1. We each other one day while John a book in the library

and I down beside him.

a. met / was reading / sat b. had met / was reading / had sat

c. meet / is reading / have sat d. will meet / reads / sat

1. John his parents in France at the moment. He in New

York, but his parents for the past few weeks.

1. was visiting / live / had visited
2. has visited / lived / is visiting
3. is visiting / lives / has been visiting
4. has been visiting / had live / has been visiting
5. - to come over for dinner tonight?

* Oh, I’m sorry, I can’t. I to a movie tonight with some friends.

a. Have you wanted / will go b. Did you want / went

c. Do you want / am going d. Are you wanting / go

1. He a good day until a thief into his apartment,

all his money, and him up.

1. has been having /comes / takes / tied
2. had been having /came / took / tied
3. was having / had came / took / tied
4. is having / is coming / has take / ties

MODULE 9 59

1. - Where on holiday?

* I don’t know. We yet.

1. will you go / are not going to decide b. are you going / have not decided

c. have you gone / do not decide d. did you go / had not decided

1. When I the street I somebody call my name.

£ a. have crossed / hear b. had crossed / would hear

c. am crossing / will hear d. was crossing / heard

1. The train at 8.58, so we in Scotland by lunchtime.

a. leaves / will be b. left / have been c. has left / were d. left / had been

1. I think by the time we there, Jim .

a. get / will have left b. got / has left

c. will get / will leave d. had got / left

1. I the time when I as a teacher.

a. have never forgot / have first worked b. am never forgetting / first work

c. will never forget / first worked d. had never forgot / was first working

1. Women in presidential elections since 1921.

a. vote b. have voted c. had voted d. are voting

1. By the time the boss at 9.00, his employees for two hours.

a. will arrive / are working b. arrives / will have been working

c. arrived / have been working d. has arrived / were working

1. - I am hungry. I lunch yet.

* Don’t worry. I you a sandwich.

a. have not had / will get b. do not have / am going to get

c. will not have / have got d. am not having / get

1. Do vou think everything when we from the store?
2. will be finished / get back
3. is finished / will get back
4. is going to finish / are getting back -
5. has been finished / will have got back
6. Look! Mary \_\_\_ a beautiful new dress. She so pretty in the dress.

a. was wearing / looked b. wears / has looked

c. has been wearing / is looking d. is wearing / looks

1. I am sick of rain and bad weather! Hopefully, when we up tomorrow

morning, the sun .

a. will wake / will shine b. are waking / shines

c. are going to wake / is shining d. wake / will be shining

1. When the president off the plane, the crowd for him for half an hour.

a. gets / will wait b. got / had been waiting

c. had got / was waiting ' d. has got / will be waiting

1. Jane at my house when you .

a. is / will arrive b. will be / will arrive

c. will be / arrive d. is / are going to arrive

1. They here for three years before you last week.

a. have worked / came b. have been working / come

c. was working / had come d. had been working / came

1. These students hard since the beginning of the school year because

they their graduation exam next May.

1. studied / are going to take b. are studying / will be taking

c. study / will have taken d. have been studying / will take

1. The students chapter 5 next week, so they to prepare for it now.
2. have studied / will read b. are studying / have read

c. will study / read d. will be studying / are reading

1. By the time John to help, we the work.

a. comes / finished b. comes / will have finished

c. will come / will have d. came / have finished

1. Mary sometimes to turn off the computer before she home.

a. forgot / had gone b. has forgot / is going

c. is forgetting / has gone d. forgets / goes

1. They good preparations before they their final examination yesterday.

a. made / had taken b. had made / took

c. have made / take d. will have made / have taken

1. He a birthday party tomorrow for his daughter who three.

a. is having / turns b. will have had / will turn

c. is going to have/ has turned d. has had / is going to turn

1. When Susan yesterday, Peter dinner. He cooking

very much and often the meals himself.

1. phoned / was cooking / likes / prepares
2. had phoned / cooked / liked / prepared
3. was phoning / was cooking / has liked / is preparing
4. has phoned / is cooking / is liking / preparing
5. They to finish their work because they Los Angeles next Sunday.

a. are needing / visit b. need / are going to visit

c. have needed / are visiting d. needed / have visited

1. At present Mary her clothes. She the clothes on Sundays.

a. is washing / often washes b. was washing / has often washed

c. has washed / is often washing d. washes / often washed

1. I that movie before last night.

a. did not see b. has not seen c. had not seen d. will see

1. I Lisa at the museum when I to restaurant but she me.
2. was seeing / was going / had not seen
3. had seen / went / was not seeing
4. have seen / have gone / does not see
5. saw / was going / did not see
6. Ever since human beings the Earth, they use of various

form of communication.

a. have inhabited / have made b. inhabited / are making

c. had inhabited / had made d. inhabit / make

1. By the time John the destination, he for about three hours.

a. will get / has walked b. gets / will have been walking

c. has got / walks d. is getting / is walking

MODULE 9 **61**

**MODULE 10**

MODAL VERBS **(Động**

1. **CAN - CANNOT (can’t)**

Can được dùng để diễn đạt:

* Khả năng hoặc cơ hội ỏ hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ví du: I can ride a horse. (Tôi biết cười ngựa.)

We can stay with my brother when we are in Paris.

(Chúng ta có thể ở với anh tôi khi chúng ta đến Paris.)

* Sự xin phép và cho phép.

Ví du: All of you cannot stay out after 10 pm.

(Tất cả các em không được ở ngoài sau 10 giờ tối.)

* Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị hoặc gợi ý.

Ví du: Can you give me a hand? (Bạn có thể giúp tôi không?)

* Khả năng có thể xảy ra hoặc dự đoán.

Ví du: Any child can grow up to be a famous person.

(Bất cứ đứa trẻ nào khi lớn lèn củng cỏ thể trở thành người nổi tiếng.)

1. COULD - COULD NOT (couldn’t)

Could được dùng để diễn đạt:

* Khả năng ở quá khứ.

Ví du: Nancy could ski by the age of ten. (Nancy biết trượt tuyết khi lèn 10.)

* Khả năng có thể xảy ra / dự đoán (nhưng không chắc chắn bằng can). Ví du: This new drug could be an important step in the fight against

cancer. (Loại thuốc mới này có thể là một bước quan trọng trong trận chiến chống ung thư.)

* Sự xin phép; could lễ phép và trịnh trọng hơn can. Nhưng không dùng could để diễn đạt sự cho phép.

Ví du: Could I use your computer? -Yes, of course you can.

(Tôi dùng máy tính của bạn được không? ~Tất nhiên là dược.)

* Lời đề nghị, gợi ý hoặc lời yêu cầu lịch sự.

Ví du: Could you open the door, please? (Vui lòng mở giúp cửa.)

1. WILL - WILL NOT (won’t): Xem Module 9 - Phần các thì Tương lai.
2. WOULD - WOULD NOT (wouldn’t)

* Would là hình thức quá khứ của will.

Ví du: He said he would be back soon. (Anh ấy dã nói sẽ về ngay.)

* Would là trợ động từ tình thái, được dùng để diễn đạt:
* Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị lịch sự.

Ví du: Would you pay me in cash, please?

(Vui lòng thanh toán bàng tiền mặt.)

* Thói quen trong quá khứ.

Ví du: When we were children we would go skiing every winter.

(Khi còn nhỏ, mùa đông nào chúng tôi củng di trượt tuyết.)

1. SHALL - SHALL NOT (shan’t)

* Shall được dùng cho ngôi thứ nhất (7, we) để diễn đạt hoặc dự đoán sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

Ví du: I shall be rich one day. (Một ngày nào đó tôi sẽ giàu có.)

* Shall được dùng chủ yếu trong câu hỏi xin ý kiến hoặc lời khuyên, câu **đề** nghị (Shall I...?) hoặc câu gợi ý (Shall we...?).

**Ví du**: Where shall we go now? (Giờ chứng ta sẽ đi đâu?)

Shall we go to the movies? (Chúng ta đi xem phim nhé?)

1. SHOULD - SHOULD NOT (shouldn’t) \*\*

* Should là hình thức quá khứ của shall.

**Ví du**: I said I should consider the things carefully.

(Tôi đã nói là tôi sẽ xem xét mọi việc cẩn thận.)

* Should là động từ tình thái được dùng để diễn đạt:
* Sự bắt buộc, bổn phận (nghĩa của should không mạnh bằng must).

Ví du: You should study harder. (Bạn phải học hành chăm chỉ hơn.)

* Lời khuyên, lời đề nghị.

**Ví du**: You should not do so. (Bạn không nên làm như vậy.)

* Hỏi xin lời khuyên, ý kiến hoặc sự hướng dẫn.

Ví du: What should we do now? (Bây giờ chúng ta nên làm gì?)

1. OUGHT TO - OUGHT NOT TO (oughtn’t to)

Ought to được dùng để diễn đạt:

* Lời khuyên, sự bắt buộc (nghĩa của ought to tương tự với should).

**Ví du**: You ought not to stay up so late. (Bạn không nên thức khuya như vậy.) You ought to be more careful. (Bạn phải cẩn thận hơn.)

* Sự mong đợi.

**Ví du**: He should/ ought to be home by seven o’clock. (Anh ấy nên về nhà trước 7 giờ) [I expect him to be home by seven o’clock.]

1. MUST - MUST NOT (mustn’t)

Must được dùng để diễn đạt:

-Sự cần thiết, sự bắt buộc (nghĩa của must mạnh hơn should! ought to - với should có thể lựa chọn làm hoặc không làm, nhưng với must không có sự lựa chọn).

**Ví dụ**: Students must pass an entrance examination to study at this school. (Để dược học ở trường này sinh viên phải đậu kỳ thi tuyển sinh.) All candidates must answer ten questions.

(Tất cả các ứng viên phải trả lời 10 câu hỏi.) .

* Lời khuyên, lời yêu cầu được nhấn mạnh.

**Ví du**: It’s a really interesting film. You must see it.

(Phim đó thật sự rất hay. Bạn nên xem nó.)

* Sự suy luận hợp lý, chắc chán.

YL**dụ**: Harry has been driving all day - he must be tired.

(Harry lái xe cả ngày - chắc anh ấy mệt lắm.)

Must not (mustn’t) được dùng để chỉ sự cấm đoán.

MODULE 10 63

Ví du: Gars must not park in front of the entrance.

(Ô tồ không dược dỗ trước lối vào.)

1. HAVE TO DON’T HAVE TO

* Have to được dùng đề diễn đạt sự cần thiết, sự bắt buộc (have to được dùng để chỉ sự bắt buộc do nội quy, mệnh lệnh, quy định,v.v; must được dùng để chỉ sự bắt buộc đến từ cảm xúc và mong ước của người nói.)

Ví du: The soup has to be stirred continuously to prevent burning.

(Món súp cần dược khuấy thường xuyên dể không, bị cháy.)

They have to leave earlier than usual.

(Họ phải di sớm hơn thường lệ.)

* Do not have to (= don’t need) chỉ sự không cần thiết.

Ví du: Today is Sunday, so I do not have to get up early.

(Hôm nay Chủ nhật nên tôi không cần phải dậy sớm.)

\* Lưu ý:

* Trợ động từ do (do, does, did) được dùng trong câu phủ định và câu hỏi.
* Have to được dùng thay must trong thì hiện tại hoàn thành, thì tiếp diễn, thì quá khứ, thì tương lai, dạng nguyên thể, danh động từ, và sau các động từ tình thái.

1. MAY **/** MIGHT **-** MAY NOT **(mayn’t) /** MIGHT NOT **(mightn’t)**

May / might được dùng đế diễn đạt:

* Sự xin phép (trang trọng và lễ phép hơn can Ị could). May được dùng để chỉ sự cho phép.

Ví du: May/ Might I put the TV on? -Yes, of course you may.

(Tôi có thể mở tivi không? ~Vâng, tất nhiên.)

* Khả năng có thể xảy ra/ sự suy đoán (might ít chắc chắn, ít khẳng định hơn may.)

Ví du: There may/ might be other problems that we do not know about. (Có lẽ còn nhiều vấn dề khác mà chúng ta không biết.)

May dược dùng để diễn đạt lời cầu chúc trang trọng (không dùng might).

Ví du: May you have a good trip. (Chúc bạn một chuyến đi vui vẻ.)

1. HAD BETTER - HAD BETTER NOT Had better được dùng đề diễn đạt:

* Lời khuyên.

Ví du: You had better take your umbrella with you today.

(Hôm nay bạn nên mang theo dù.)

* Lời cảnh báo.

Ví du: You had better work harder or you will be sacked. (Tốt hơn là bạn nên làm việc chăm chỉ hơn nếu không bạn sẽ bị đuổi đấy.)

1. NEED - NEEDN’T

Need được dùng để diễn đạt sự cần thiết hoặc sự bắt buộc.

Ví du: It is not cold. You needn’t take your coat.

(Trời không lạnh. Bạn khổng cần mang theo áo khoác.)

This is the only form you need to fill in.

(Đây là mẫu dơn duy nhất mà bạn cần phải điền.)

**s** + would rather (+ not) + V **bare-infinitive** (+ than)... **s + would rather (that) + s + V past simple / past perfect**

Ví du: I would rather stay at home. (Tôi thích ở nhà hơn.)

I would rather stay at home than go to the movie.

(Tôi thích ở nhà hơn đi xem phim.)

I would rather you went home now.

(Tôi muốn anh về nhà ngay hây giờ.)

I would rather you had gone home yesterday. (Tôi muốn anh về nhà hôm qua.) [You didn’t go home yesterday.]

14. USED TO - DID NOT USE TO

* Used to được dùng để diễn đạt tình trạng hoặc thói quen trong quá‘khứ mà nay không còn nữa.

Ví du: He used to live here. (Anh ấy đã từng sống ở đây.)

My father used to smoke a lot, but he stopped smoking last year. (Trước đây cha tôi hút thuốc rất nhiều, nhưng năm ngoái ông đã bỏ thuốc.)

* Be/ get used to + V-ing/ noun: quen với/ trở nên quen với

Ví du: My mother is used to getting up early. (Mẹ tôi quen dậy sớm.)

\* Lưu ý: Dùng did trong câu phủ định, câu hỏi và câu hỏi đuôi. Used not to (usednt to) cũng có thể được dùng trong câu phủ định.

* MODAL VERB + BE + V-ing: Dự đoán sự việc có thể đang (hoặc không đang) xảy ra.

Ví du: It is 9 am. He must be working.

(Bây giờ là 9 giờ sáng. Chắc chắn anh ấy đang làm việc.)

John may / might be playing football at his school - but I am not sure. (Cổ lẽ John đang chơi đá bóng ỏ trường - nhưng tôi không chắc.)

* MODAL VERB + HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE: Dự đoán sự việc có thể đã (hoặc đã không) xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Ví du: Peter failed the exam again. He must have been very sad. (Peter lại thi rớt. Chắc là anh ấy (dã) buồn lắm.)

John cannot have been at the party last night. I am sure that he has gone to London for three days. (John không thể nào có mặt tại buổi tiệc tối qua. Tôi biết chắc là anh ấy đã đi Luân Đôn ba ngày nay.) ■

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. John | speak three languages. |  |  |
| a. will | b. cán c. has to | d. | must |
| 2. | you play the piano? - Of course, yes. |  |  |
| a. Can | b. Must c. Should | d. | Need |

MODULE 10 65

1. The machine be turned on by pressing this button.

a. might b. ought to c. should d. can

1. you hold your breath for more than a minute? - Of course not.

a. Needn’t b. Would c. Might d. Can

1. I speak Arabic fluently when I was a child and we lived in Egypt.

a. would b. could c. must d. had to

1. When I was five years old, I \_1 read and write.

a. can b. could \* c. may d. should

1. It is hot in here. you open the window a bit, please?

a. Could b. Must c. Should d. Might

1. The book is optional. My professor said we read it if we needed

extra information for the essay. But we read it if we don’t want to.

a. will / cannot b. must / ought not

c. could / do not have to d. can / should not

1. Please make sure to water my plants while I am gone. If they don’t get

enough water, they die.

a. must b. will c. should d. ought to

1. They be away for the weekend but I am not sure.

a. needn’t b. should not c. must d. might

1. You leave now if you wish.

a. have to b. must c. may d. would

1. Let’s go out for a drink. - I love to.

a. will b. would c. must d. should

1. He is speaking English, but I think he be Vietnamese, by judging by his accent.

a. will b. could c. would d. should

1. Listen, please. You talk during this exam.

a. won’t b. mustn’t c. wouldn’t d. couldn’t

1. go on my own. You go with me.

a. will / mustn’t b. should / would not

c. could / will not d. can / needn’t /

16. You tell Sandra anything about our story. She keep a secret.

a. had better not / cannot b. needn’t / would rather not

c. ought to / would not d. do not have to / should not

1. am not really sure where Beverly is. She in the living room, or

perhaps she is in the backyard.

a. could not sit b. cannot sit c. must be sitting d. might be sitting

1. With luck, tomorrow be a sunny day.

a. could b. must c. would rather d. needn’t

1. Dane the book we borrowed from the library. It was on the table,

but now it has gone.

a. must have returned b. should have returned

c. cannot have returned d. needn’t have returned

1. You translate that. I understand what you say.

a. wouldn’t b. needn’t c. mustn’t d. couldn’t

1. You be right but I am not sure so I am going back to check anyway.

a. can b. must c. should d. might

1. You the air pressure in your tires if you do not want to get a flat

tire on your trip.

a. should be checked b. do not have to check

c. mustn’t check d. ought to check

1. The computer does not work. It during transportation.

a. must have been damaged b. should have been damaged

c. can be damaging d. will damage

1. Mary decided not to join US for dinner. She stay at work to finish

the marketing report.

a. had to b. must c. can d. may

1. You book the tickets for the play in advance because they sell out quickly.

a. could b. mustn’t c. have to d. may

1. You can’t mean that! You .

a. must be joking b. can be joking c. can joke d. have to joke

1. If Daisy has not come home yet, she for us at the school gate.

a. can’t be waiting b. would be waiting

c. must still be waiting d. will be waiting

1. It Sam who called and did not leave a message on the answering

machine. I am not sure.

a. must be b. might be c. must have been d. might have been

1. Margaret promised to meet us at the entrance to the theater tomorrow

night. She for us when we get there.

a. mustn’t be waiting b. could not be waiting

c. ought to be waiting d. might have been waiting

1. What do you have in mind? - I prefer a long dress.

a. will b. would c. can d. must

1. She a lot after his husband’s accident. That was why her eyes

were so red and swollen.

a. must be crying b. can have cried c. must have cried d. will have cried

1. She that it is a good idea. It is crazy!

a. can’t think b. must think c. may have thought d. could think

1. I use your car? - Of course. Here’s the key.

a. May b. Must c. Need d. Should

1. I have you stayed with me during the summer.

a. could b. may c. must d. would rather

1. I know what you mean. You explain further.

a. won’t b. mightn’t c. needn’t d. mustn’t

1. Hiking the trail to the peak be dangerous if you are not well

prepared\*for dramatic weather changes.

a. shall b. should c. might d. had better

1. She be able to come on holiday next month if her parents give her permission.

a. will b. can c. could d. mustn’t

MODULE 10 67

1. We forget our identity card when we are travelling.

a. need b. mustn’t c. could not d. have to

1. Look! She is laughing. She something funny or happy.

a. must have b. must have had c. could have had d. can’t have had

1. Your diving equipment regularly if you want to keep it in good condition.

a. may be cleaned b. can’t be cleaned c. can clean d. must be cleaned

1. Are you joking? David a new car last week. I am sure that he does

not have money.

a. mustn’t be buying b. would be buying

c. may have bought d. can’t have bought

1. Our teacher is so strict. We forget to do our homework.

a. must b. mustn’t c. needn’t d. may

1. you mind if I brought a colleague with me?

a. Can b. Must c. Would d. Might

1. John was sacked last year. He harder

a. may have worked b. should have worked

c. must have worked d. should be working

1. We be able to go to the party. We are going to a wedding.

a. will b. must c. may d. might

1. When you have a small child in the house, you leave small objects lying around.

a. may not b. should not c. needn’t d. ought to

1. John drive when he was eighteen.

a. cannot b. could not c. would rather not d. might not

1. Frank’s wallet is lying on the coffee table. He it here last night.

a. had to leave b. will have left c. must leave d. must have left

1. We walk all the way home. We take a taxi.

a. could not / had to b. needn’t / can

c. would rather not / must d. ought not to / might

1. I was reading the book last night before I went to bed. I never took it out of

this room. It around here somewhere. Where it be?

a. should have been / shall b. could lie / must

c. must be lying / can d. had to be lying / will

**MODULE 11)**

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES - WISH and IF ONLY

(Câu điêu *kiện - WI* và IF ONLY)

I. CÂU ĐIỂU KIỆN (CONDITIONAL SENTENCES)

Câu điều kiện gồm có hai mệnh đề: mệnh đề if (if-clause) chỉ điều kiện và mệnh đề chính (main clause) chỉ kết quả. Có ba loại câu điều kiện:

1. Điều kiện có thật trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai (real condition in the present or future): có thể thực hiện trong hiện tậi hoặc tương lai.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| IF CLAUSE | MAIN CLAUSE |
| Present tense | will + bare-infinitive |

Ví du: If he runs, he’ll get there in time.

(Nếu anh ấy chạy thì anh ấy sẽ đến dó kịp lúc.)

* Dùng thì hiện tại đơn (present simple) trong mệnh đề chính để diễn đạt một sự thật hiển nhiên, một quy luật hoặc một thói quen.

Ví du: If we boil water, it vapors. (Nếu chúng ta đun nước, nưởc sẽ bốc hơi.)

* Dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn trong mệnh đề điều kiện để diễn đạt sự tiếp diễn của hành động và thì hiện tại hoàn thành để diễn đạt sự hoàn tất. Ví du: If the baby is sleeping, don’t make noise.

(Nếu em bé đang ngủ, đừng làm ồn.)

If you have finished your work, you can go home.

(Nếu bạn làm xong thì bạn có thể về.)

* Các động từ tình thái can, may, might, should, ought to, have to, must,... có thể được dùng trong mệnh đề chính (main clause).

Ví du: If you get here before eight, we can catch the early train. (Nếu anh đến dây trước 8 giờ thì chúng ta có thể bắt chuyến iàu sớm.) 2. Điều kiện không có thật trong hiện tại (Unreal condition in the present): khồng có thật hoặc không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| IF CLAUSE | MAIN CLAUSE |
| Past simple | would / should/ could / might + bare inf. |

Ví du: If I knew her name, I would tell you. (Nếu tôi biết tên cô ấy, tôi sẽ nói với anh. ) —> but I don’t know her name If he was older, he would be wiser.

(Nếu nó lớn hơn, nó sẽ khôn ngoan hơn.)

- Were thường được dùng thay cho was (với 1, he, she, it) trong cấu trúc này. Ví du: If he were older, he would be wiser.

3. Điều kiện không có thật trong quá khứ (Unreal condition in the past): không thể xảy ra trong quá khứ

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| IF CLAUSE | MAIN CLAUSE |
| Past perfect | would / should / could / might + have + past part. |

Ví du: If you had invited Sue, she would have come. (Giá mà bạn mời Sue thì cô ấy đã đến rồi.) -> but you didn’t invite Sue so she did not come.

Lưu ý:

- Có thể dùng kết hợp điều kiện loại 2 và loại 3 (không có thật trong hiện tại và không có thật trong quá khứ)

Ví du: If John had not drunk so much last night, he would not feel

sick now. (Nếu tối qua John không uống quá nhiều thì bây giờ anh ấy sẽ không buồn nôn.)

MODULE 11 **69**

If I knew you were coming I would have baked a cake.

(Nếu biết bạn đến thì tôi đã nướng bánh rồi.)

- Không dùng will, would trong mệnh đề điều kiện (if-clause)

**Ví du**: If I have time, ru help you. (NOT **If I’ll hav**e **time, ril help you**.) • Những cách khác để diễn tả điều kiện

1. Unless = if... not; except if (nếu ... không; trừ khi)

**Ví du**: I’ll take the job unless the pay is too low. (= if the pay isn’t too low / except if the pay is too low)

(Tôi sẽ nhận công việc đó nếu tiền lương không quá thấp.)

1. Without / But for + noun (nếu không)

**Ví du**: If you did not help me, I would not overcome the trouble.

-> Without / But for your help, I would not overcome the trouble. (Nếu không cổ sự giúp đờ của bạn thì tôi đã không qua được rắc rối đó.)

1. Should / Were / Had + subject + verb

**Vi du**: Should you change your mind, ... (= If you should change ...) Were she my daughter, ... (= If she were my daughter ...)

Had **I** not realised what you intended, ... (= If I hadn’t realised ...) [NOT **Hadn’t I r**e**ali**se**d** wh**a**t **you intended**,...]

1. Imagine (that), suppose/ suppôsing (that) (giả sử như), provided/ provid­ing (that), as/ so long as, on condition (that) (miến là, với diều kiện là), or/ otherwise (nếu không), only if (chỉ khi), in case (nếu),...

**Ví du**: Start soon otherwise you will be late. (Hăy bắt dầu sớm, nếu không bạn sẽ trễ.) [= If you do not start soon, you will be late.]

I’ll give you the day off on condition that you work on Saturday morning. (Tôi sẽ cho anh nghỉ một ngày vớỉ điều kiện là anh phải làm việc vào sáng thứ Bảy.)

II. WISH & IF ONLY

Sau wish và if only có 3 loại mệnh đề được dùng để chĩ sự ao ước ở tương lai, hiện tại và quá khứ.

1. Ao ước ở tương lai (Future wish): mong điều gì đó sè xảy ra trong tương lai.

^ + wish + g + would/ could + V(bare-inf)

**Vi du**: I wish we would not have an exam tomorrow.

(Ước gì ngày mai chúng tôi không phải thi.)

If only it would stop raining, we could go out.

(Giá mà trời tạnh mưa, chúng ta có thể di chơi.)

1. Ao ước ở hiện tại (Present wish): Xíớc điều không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại.

**s +** wish Q v

**If** only s (past simPle>

**Ví du**: I wish I was rich. (Ước gì tôi giàu có.) -> but I’m poor now v If only I knew her name. (Ước gì tôi biết tên cô ấy.)

**,0** .

- Were có thể được dùng thay cho was trong cấu trúc này, nhất là trong lối văn trịnh trọng.

Ví du: I wish I were rich.

1. Ao ước ở quá khứ (Past wish): ước điều gì đó đã hoặc đã không xổy ra trong quá khứ.

+ **s** + V(past perfect)

Ví du: I wish I had succeeded in the final exam.

(ước gì tôi đã đậu kỳ thi cuối cùng.) -> but I failed the exam If only you hadn’t said that. (Giá mà anh dà không nói diều đó.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.**

1. If she me, tell her to leave a message.

a. calls b. will call c. called d. would call

1. John will pick me up .

a. in case it rained b. if it rains

c. provided that it would rain d. unless it rained

1. you want to go out during a lecture, what should you do?

a. As b. If c. Though d. When

1. If you won the lottery, ?

a. what will you do b. what had you done

c. what would you do d. what did you do

1. If we start the new project, we more staff.

a. will need b. need c. would need d. needed

1. If John 10 years younger, he for the job.

a. is / will apply b. was / has applied

c. had been / will have applied d. were / would apply

1. You will not be allowed to attend the club meeting you are a member.

a. unless b. if c. providing that d. supposed that

1. people had not cut so many trees.

a. If b. If only c. Unless d. Even if

1. If the president last night’s train, he here now.

a. took / were b. were taking / is

c. had taken / would have been d. had taken / would be

1. If he more time, he decorating the baby’s room before she was bom.

a. has / will have finished b. had / would finish

c. had had / would have finished d. had had / would finish

1. he arrives soon, we will have to start the conference without him.

a. Suppose b. Provided c. Unless d. If

1. as much money as Bill Gates of Microsoft, I would retire.

a. If I had b. If I have c. Unless I had d. If I had had

MODULE II 71

here, he would help US with these troubles.

a. Were our father b. If our father had been

13.

14.

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

1. 21.

22.

23.

24.

25.

26.

27.

28.

29.

30.

c. Was our father d. Unless our father were

more carefully, he would not have had the accident yesterday.

a. If Peter drove b. Had Peter driven

c. Only if Peter could drive d. Unless Peter had driven

If it tomorrow, I will not have to water the plants.

a. will rain b. is raining c. would rain d. rains

We more chances to attack during the last game if the strikers

the ball more exactly.

a. will have had / have passed b. will have / were passing

c. would have / passed d. would have had / had passed

, tell him I have gone to London.

a. If Mr. Jones called b. Unless Mr. Jones calls

c. Should Mr. Jones call d. If Mr. Jones will call

you apologize for what you have done, I will never be your friend.

a. Unless b. If c. As if d. Even if

Practice more and more you can never speak English fluently.

a. and b. or c. in case d. if

It was much colder than we had thought. we had taken more warm clothes.

a. If b. Unless c. But for d. If only

, they would not have had such a successful conference.

a. Due to good preparations b. But for they had had good preparations

c. Without good preparations d. If their good preparations

If you \_\_\_\_\_\_ her, what ?

a. are / will you do b. have been / might you do

c. were / would you do d. had been / will you have done

You should not eat more yourself ill.

a. or you will make b. in case you would make

c. if you would make d. unless you would have made

I would have crashed the car .

a. unless you warned me b. in case you warn me

c. if there were a warning d. but for your warning

Call your parents they will start to worry.

a. if only b. otherwise c. if so d. in case

If it for the life jacket, I would have drowned.

a. is not b. was not c. has not been d. had not been

He may never speak to me again if he out what happened.

a. will And b. was finding' c. finds d. had found

heavy traffic we would not have been late for the train.

a. If b. If only c. Supposed d. But for

She had to have the operation or she .

a. dies b. will die c. would die d. would have died

Our cat \_ you if you rub her belly.

a. will bite b. would bite c. will have bitten d. would have bitten

1. the boat leaves on time, we will arrive in Paris by the morning.

a. If only b. Provided that c. But for d. Without

1. to the music after 10 pm, you should turn the volume down or use an earphone.

a. If you are listening b. Unless you listen

c. Provided you won’t listen d. Otherwise you listen

1. If Mary so long on the computer last night, her eyes red now.

a. did not worked / do not get b. were not working / did not get

c. had not been working / would not get d. had not worked / would not have got

1. If I him this afternoon, I him in the evening.

a. do not see / will phone b. will not see / phone

c. did not see / would phone d. have not seen / am going to phone

1. I am so tired from working so hard. • at home now.

a. Supposing that I had been b. if I was

c. Provided that I was d. If only I were

1. If they him yesterday, he to the party now.

a would not have insulted / were coming b. did not insult / will come

c. had not insulted / would have come d. had not insulted / would come'

1. Try harder you will lose everything you have.

a. provided that b. supposing that c. if d. unless

1. his best contribution, our team would not have won the game.

a. But for b. If c. If only d. Unless

1. The salesgirl told the boy that if he did not leave she the police immediately.

a. will call b. called c. would call d. would have called

1. Submit the report to the boss it.

a. unless you would finish b. provided that you would finished

c. if you have finished d. if only you finished

1. Tina’s train arrived ahead of schedule. I had decided to go to the

train station early, she would have waited there for more than twenty minutes before I arrived.

a. unless b. if c. otherwise d. supposed that

1. I wish at the seaside now.

a. I am b. if only I were c. I had been d. I were

1. Peter behaved so badly at the party. I wish him.

a. I do not invite b. I did not invite c. I had not invited d. I would not invite

1. I wish she up for a moment and let someone else speak.

a. will shut b. would shut c. is going to shut d. shut

1. Peter wishes that he part in the game, but he cannot because of

his injured leg.

a. can take b. is taking c. were taking d. had taken

1. I wish you borrowing money from me. You have never paid it back.

a. would not keep b. do not keep c. are not keeping d. have not kept

1. Mary told her friends that she would arrive on time. She wishes she

to be on time because now they are waiting for her.

a. promised b. did not promise

c. would not promise d. had not promised

**MODULE 11 73**

1. Peter’s flat is hot. He wishes .

a. that it were not b. if it was not c. it had not been d. if it would not

1. The film was so bad. We wish our money on it.

a. if we did not spend b. that we did not spend

c. that we had not spent d. whether we had not spent

1. We wish it raining soon so that we can depart our trip.

a. stops b. will stop c. would stop d. had stopped

**MODULE 12]**

PASSIVE FORM

Câu bị động (passive sentence) là câu trong đó chủ ngữ là người hay vật nhận hoặc chịu tác dộng của hành động.

• Cách đổi sang câu bị động (Passive transformation)

Active: Subject Verb ^\_\_\_\_-Object

Passive: Subject **BE** + past participle by Object

Vi du: They built that bridge in 1999. (Họ xây cây cầu dó năm 1999.) -» That bridge was built in 1999. (Cây cầu đó được xây năm 1999.)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Present simple | -\* | am/ is/ are + past participle |
| Present continuous | -> | am/ is/ are + being + past participle • |
| Past simple | • -> | was/ were + past participle |
| Past continuous | -> | was/ were + being + past participle |
| Present perfect | —> | have/ has + been + past participle |
| Past perfect | -> | had + been + past participle |
| Future simple | —> | will + be + past participle |
| Future continuous | -> | will be + being + past participle |
| Future perfect | -» | will + have been + past participle |
| Be going to | —> | am1 is/ are going to + be + past participle |
| Modal verbs | —> | can, should, must,... + be + past participle |
| Present infinitive | -> | to be + past participle |
| Perfect infinitive | -» | to have been + past participle |
| Present participle | -> | being + past participle |
| Perfect participle | -» | having been + past participle |

**\* Lưu ý:**

* Chỉ có thể đổi sang câu bị động với những câu có ngoại động từ (transi­tive verb).
* Động từ to be trong câu bị động phải thích hợp với thì (tense) của câu chủ động và phù hợp với chủ từ bị động (passive subject).
* Các chủ từ I, we, you, they, he, she, one, everyone, somebody, people trong câu chủ động thường đuợc bỏ đi trong câu bị động.
* Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn + BY (agent) + Trạng từ chỉ thời gian Ví du: The vase was put on the table by Peter yesterday.
* Trạng từ chỉ thể cách thường đứng giữa be và quá khứ phân từ.

Ví du: The problem has been carefully studied by the scientists.

(Vấn đề đã dược các nhà khoa học nghiên cứu kỹ.)

• Một sấ cấu trúc bị động đặc biệt (Special passive structures)

1. Động từ với hai tân ngữ (verb with two objects)

Khi động từ chủ động có hai tân ngữ (objects) thì cả hai tân ngữ đều có thể làm chủ ngữ cho câu bị động. Tuy nhiên tân ngữ chỉ người thường được sử dụng hơn.

Ví du: My mother gave me (I.O) some money (D.O).

-► I was given some money by my mother.

-> Some money was given to me by my mother.

1. Động từ chỉ giác quan (verbs of perception: see, notice, hear, look, taste,...)

Active: **s** + V + o + bare-inf. / V-ing

**Passive: s + be + past part. + to-inf. / V-ing**

Vi du: We saw her go/ going out of the house.

-» She was seen to go/ going out of the house.

1. Động từ chỉ cảm xúc (like, love, hate, wish, prefer, hope,...)

Active: **s** + V + **o** + to-infinitive

Passive: **s + v+ 0** + tobe **+** past part.

**Vi** du: He wanted someone to take some photos.

-> He wanted some photos to be taken.

1. Động từ chỉ ý kiến

Active: **s** + V (+ that) + clause (S**2** + V**2** + O**2**...)

Passive: • It + be + past participle (+ that) + clause

• S**2** + be + past participle + to-infinitive / to have + pp

Vi du: People say (that) John is nice.

-> It is said (that) John is nice -» John is said to be nice.

\* Lưu ý: Hành động của mệnh đề that xảy ra trước hành động trong mệnh đề chính thì dùng perfect infinitive (to have + past participle).

Vi du: They report that three victims were missing.

-» Three victims are reported to have been missing.

1. Thể sai khiến (Causative form)

Active: " **s** + have + o (person) + bare-infinitive + o (thing) **s** + get + o (person) + to-infinitive + o (thing)

Passive: **s** + have/ get + o (thing) + past participle

Ví du: I will have some workers repair the roof./ I will get some workers to repair the roof.

-> I will have/ get the roof repaired.

MODULE 12 76

/

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose a, bv c, or d that best completes the sentence, or that has the closest meaning to the original sentence.**

1.

yet?

b. Has the essay written d. Was the essay be written

**2**.

3.

4.

a. Has the essay been written c. Did the essay write nuclear waste is dangerous.

a. It says b. It is said c. People is said d. It is saying

They have not used this typewriter for a long time.

1. For a long time has not been used this typewriter.
2. This typewriter has not used for a long time.
3. This typewriter has been not used for a long time.
4. This typewriter has not been used for a long time.

All bottles before transportation.

a. is froze b. were frozen c. will been frozen d. have frozen

5.

last year?

Did this van buy

6.

b. Was this van bought d. Has this van been bought seriously ill.

b. is said to be c. is said for being d. is said being

7.

9.

a.

c. Has this van bought

The club president

a. is said

They do not allow smoking in schools.

a. Smoking is not allowed in schools, b. Schools are not allowed smoking, c. In schools are not allowed smoking, d. Smoking in schools do not allow. Peter and Tom in an accident yesterday.

a. are hurt b. were hurted c. were hurt d. have been hurt

The fire by an electrical fault.

1. could been have caused d. have caused
2. is said be not d. is said not to be \_ so that we can have a talk to our son.

d. be connect

a. could have caused c. could have been caused

1. Learning English easy.

a. says not to be b. said to be not

1. We are waiting for the telephone

a. be connecting b. to be connected c. connected

1. My house white.

a. used to paint b. are used to being painted

c. used to be painted d. used to painted

1. Chinese by more than one billion people all over the world.

a. speaks b. is speaking c. spoken d. is spoken

1. Modern zoos are very different from zoos which fifty years ago.

a. was built b. was building c. to be built d. building

1. Who established that museum?
2. Who was established that museum?
3. Was that museum established by who?
4. By whom was that museum established?
5. Did that museum establish by whom?
6. They think that someone started the fire on purpose.
7. Someone is thought to start the fire on purpose.
8. They think that the fire which was started by someone on purpose.
9. The fire is thought to be started on purpose.
10. The fire is thought to have been started on purpose.
11. The player quickly from the fall.
12. reported to be recovered b. reported to has recovered

c. is reported to have recovered d. is reported to have been recovered

1. The little boy put the fish in the pool and immediately it was nowhere .
2. to see b. saw c. to be seeing d. to be seen.
3. Up to now Down’s syndrome .

a. have not been cured b. have not to be cured

c. have not cured d. have not been curing

1. They do not understand what he is saying.
2. He is not being understood.
3. He does not understanding what is being said.
4. What is being said does not understand.
5. What he is saying is not understood.
6. The prisoner yesterday.

a. released b. has released c. was released d. has been released

1. That machine eggs.

a. is used for grading b. is used grading

c. used to grade d. is used to grading

1. I am looking for the report which on the table.

a. placed b. has been placed c. was placing d. has placed

1. They consider stamp collecting as a favorite pastime.
2. A favorite pastime is considered stamp collecting.
3. A favorite pastime is to be considered stamp collecting by them.
4. Stamp collecting is considered as a favorite pastime.
5. Stamp collecting is considered to be as a favorite pastime.
6. Sea turtle eggs to protect from by other animals.

a. are buried / being eaten c. are burying / eating

b. buried / to be eaten d. be buried / eaten to prevent forest destruction, b. should be controlled d. controlling

1. The cutting down of trees

a. should control c. would control

1. The first turtles about 200 million years ago.

a. believed to exist b. are believing to be existed

c. believed to be existed d. are believed to have existed

1. We cannot do this.

a. This cannot do. b. This cannot do by us.

c. This cannot be done d. This cannot to be done

1. They do not know anything about the extinction of that species.
2. Anything about the extinction of that species is not known by them.
3. The extinction of that species is not known anything.

MODULE 12 77

1. Nothing is known about the extinction of that species.
2. Nothing about the extinction of that species is not known.
3. Wood pulp is used for making paper.
4. People use wood pulp to make paper.
5. Paper is made by wood pulp.
6. To make paper is used by wood pulp.
7. People are used wood pulp to make paper.
8. John wrote this novel, didn’t he?
9. This novel was written by John, didn’t he?
10. This novel was written by John, wasn’t it?
11. Did this novel be written by John, didn’t he?
12. Did this novel be written by John, didn’t it?
13. The reclaiming of land to conserve the environment.
14. should carried out b. should carry out

c. should be carried out d. should have been carried out

1. The vase of roses was put .
2. on the table by Mary yesterday morning
3. on the table yesterday morning by Mary
4. by Mary on the table yesterday morning
5. yesterday morning on the table by Mary
6. Computers since 1940s.
7. is in used b. was used to c. used d. have been in use
8. Before the Industrial Revolution to America, the majority of the

population lived in the countryside.

a. has come b. has been come c. had come d. had been come

1. Our work before the boss next week.

a. will have completed / returns b. will have been completed / returns

c. will have completed / is returned d will have been completed / will be returned

1. When did they first discover that island?
2. When did that island first discover?
3. When was that island first discovered?
4. When that island was first discovered?
5. When was first discovered that island?
6. Our plan by the members of the committee.

a. considers b. considered c. is considering d. is being considered

1. Unfortunately, the patient ; to hospital too late.

a. sent b. has sent c. had sent d. was sent

1. No one has told me about the project before.
2. The project has not told to me before.
3. The project has been not told to me before.
4. I have not told about the project before.
5. I have not been told about the project before.
6. Preparations \_\_\_\_\_ during last month before the competition started,

a. had made b. had being made

c. had been being made d. had been making

1. Some scientists report that dolphins have a brain capacity larger than human beings’.
2. A brain capacity larger than human beings’ that dolphins have to be reported.
3. Dolphins are reported having a brain capacity larger than human beings’.
4. Dolphins are reported to have a brain capacity larger than human beings’.
5. Dolphins are reported that they have a brain capacity larger than human beings’.
6. The project secret. Everybody about it soon.
7. could not been kept / is learnt b. could not be kept / learnt

c. could not be keep / was learnt d. could not kept / is learned

1. Daisy was angry that she a book which .
2. had been given / was badly damaged b. has been given / badly damaged

c. was giving / is damaged badly d. has given / damaged badly

1. We are worried about the damage by fires.

a. that caused b. causing c. caused d. was caused

1. The money soon after I receive my salary.

a. will give Peter b. will be given Peter

c. will be given to Peter d. will have given to Peter

1. Everybody congratulated him on his successful journey to explore the Everest.
2. His successful journey to explore the Everest was congratulated on him.
3. His successful journey was congratulated on him to explore the Everest.
4. He was congratulated on his successful journey to explore the Everest.
5. He was congratulated by anybody on his successful journey to explore the Everest.
6. Are you fond of the job they have offered you?
7. Are you fond of the job which has been offered to you?
8. Have they offered you the job that you are fond of?
9. Are you fond of the job has been offered to you?
10. Have you been fond of the job which has offered to you?
11. Lectures on the Internet.

a. are recorded and posted b. are recorded and post

c. are recording and posted d. are recording and be posted

1. Not much about the accident since that time.

a. has said b. it is said c. had said d. has been said



REPORTED SPEECH **TỈÊP)**

Lời nói gián tiếp (reported speech) là lời tường thuật lại ý của người nối, đôi khi không cần phải dùng đúng những từ của người nói.

Direct speech: Peter said, “I am very busy.” (Peter nói: “Tôi rất bận.9)

Reported Speech: Peter said (that) he was very busy. (Peter nói (rằng) anh ẩy rất bận.)

MODULE 1S 79

• Cách đổi từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp.

1. Câu trần thuật (statements)
2. Dùng động từ giới thiệu say hoặc tell: say (that), say to somebody (that), tell somebody (that)
3. Đổi các đại từ nhân xưng, đại từ hoặc tính từ sỏ hừu, đại từ phản thân sao cho tương ứng với chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ của mệnh đề chính.
4. Đổi thì của động từ thành thì quá khứ tương ứng.

Simple Past Past Continuous Past Perfect Past Perfect Past Perfect Continuous Would / Should / Could / Might Had to

Simple Present Present Continuous Present Perfect Simple Past Past Continuous Will / Shall / Can / May Must / Have to

\* Lưu ý: Không đổi thì trong câu gián tiếp khi động từ giới thiệu ở thì hiện tại (present simple, present continuous, present perfect), câu dẫn trực tiếp là câu điều kiện không có thật, hoặc câu trực tiếp diễn tả một chân lý, một sự thật hiển nhiên.

1. Đổi một sô các tính từ chỉ định, trạng từ hoặc trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian, nơi chốn.

That / Those Then Before

This / These

Now

Ago

Today / Tonight Tomorrow Yesterday Next week/ month

Last week/ month

That day / That night The next day, The following day The day before, The previous day The following week/ month The week/ month after The previous week/ month The week / month / year before Here -> There

Vi du: Mary said to Peter, “I have seen this film.”

-» Mary told Peter (that) she had seen that film.

(Mary nói vói Peter (rang) cổ ấy đã xem bộ phim dó rồi.)

1. Câu hỏi (questions) a. Câu hỏi Yes - No (Yes - No question)

* Dùng các động từ giới thiệu: ask, inquire, wonder, want to know.
* Dùng if hoặc whether sau động từ giới thiệu.
* Đổi cấu trúc câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật.
* Đổi thì của động từ, đại từ, tính từ, trạng từ (giống cách đổi trong câu trần thuật).

Ví du: Tom said to Mary, “Will you come next week?”

-» Tom asked Mary if / whether she would come the following

week. (Tom hỏi Mary tuần sau có đến không.)

b. Câu hỏi Wh- (Wh-question)

* Dùng các động từ giới thiệu: ask, inquire, wonder, want to know.

-Lặp lại từ để hỏi (what, where, when, why,...) sau động từ giới thiệu.

* Đổi cấu trúc câu hỏi thành câu trần thuật.
* Đổi thì của động từ, đại từ, tính từ, trạng từ.

Ví du: Tom asked me, “Where can I buy some wine?”

-» Tom asked me where he could buy some wine.

(Tom hỏi tôi anh ấy có thể mua rượu ở dâu.)

1. Câu mệnh lệnh, câu yêu cầu, lời đề nghị, lời khuyên, v.v. (re­quests, orders, offers, advices, ect.)

* Dùng động từ giới thiệu ask, telly order, request, offer, advise, ... .
* Đặt tân ngữ chỉ người nhận lệnh (nếu có) sau động từ giới thiệu.
* Dùng dạng nguyên mẫu có to (to-infinitive) của động từ trong câu trực tiếp. Ví du: The teacher said to his students, “Keep silent, please.”

-\* The teacher asked his students to keep silent.

(Thầy giáo yêu cầu học sinh giữ yên lặng.)

Tom told me, “You shouldn’t go home late.”

-> Tom advised me not to go home late.

(Tom khuyên tôi không nên về nhà trễ.)

Peter said to me, “I will help you.”

-» Peter promised to help me. (Peter hứa giúp tôi.)

1. Câu cảm thán (Exclamation)

Câu cảm thán thường được thuật lại bằng động từ exclaim, say that.

Ví du: Peter said, “How beautiful your dress is!”

-> Peter exclaimed / said (that) my dress was beautiful.

(Peter thốt lên/ nói ràng áo tôi đẹp quá.)

1. Câu hỗn hợp (Mixed types)

Khi đổi câu hỗn hợp sang câu gián tiếp ta đổi theo từng phần, dùng động từ giới thiệu riêng cho từng phần.

Ví du: Peter said, “Hi, Mary. How are you?”

-» Peter greeted Mary and asked how she was.

(Peter chào Mary và hỏi cô ấy có khỏe không.)

Peter said, “What time is it? I must go now.”

-» Peter asked what time it was and said that he had to go then. (Peter hỏi mấy giờ và nói anh ấy phải di.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence, or that has the closest meaning to the original one.

1. She told the boys on the grass.

a. do not play b. not playing c. did not play d. not to play

1. The teacher told Jim .

a. to stop talking b. stop talking c. stops talking d. stopped talking

MODULE 13 81

The mother told her son so impolitely.

a. not behave b. not to behave c. not behaving

d. did not behave

4. He asked

5.

a. her to lend She told him a. patient

\_ him the books he needed, b. she to lend c. she has lent

d. she lends

6.

d. that being patient

7.

8.

b. to be patient c. was patient

Tom told me that they meat since .

a. have not eaten / last year b. did not eat / the following year

c. had not eaten / the year before d. would not eat / the next year

She said she take me home after school.

a. would b. did c. must d. had

unreliable.

c. had been

b. did

I have ever told you he

a. is b. were

1. John said he had worked on the report since .

a. yesterday b. two days ago c. the day before

1. John told me that .

a. I must go now b. he must go now c. he had to go now

1. She said she

d. would be d. the next day d. he had to go then

b. was very tired the night before d. had been very tired the night before

12.

13.

a. was very tired last night c. had been very tired last night

John said that he had worked as a computer programmer five years .

a. ago b. before c. later d. then

They said that they their parents to repaint the house at 10

o’clock the previous day. a. had helped c. have been helping 14. The teacher advised his students good for .

b. was helping d. had been helping that book carefully because it

b. read / is / him d. to read / was / you

a. to read / was / them c. that reading / be / US 15. John said, “It is hot. Please open the window, Mary.”

1. John asked Mary it was hot and open the window.
2. John said it was hot and asked Mary to open the window.
3. John asked Mary it was hot to open the window.
4. John said it was hot Mary to open the window.

16.1 you everything I am doing, and you have to do the same.

a. will tell b. would tell c. told d. was telling

1. John said that his brother

» J a. is b. was

1. John told me that he

at home then.

, c. were

his best in the exam

d. has been

a. would do / the day before c. will do / tomorrow

19. John wanted to know if I was leaving the

a. following b. ago c. previous

b. had done / the following day d. would do / the following day . Saturday, d. before

1. Jason asked me a. if who gave
2. He asked me

me the book the day before.

b. if who has given c. who had given d. that who had given

1. where we could meet the following day
2. where if we could meet tomorrow
3. that where we could meet the following day
4. where can we meet tomorrow
5. “Who does this car belong to?” said the woman.
6. The woman asked me who does this car belong to.
7. The woman asked who did that car belong to.
8. The woman told who that car belonged to.
9. The woman wanted to know who that car belonged to.
10. I wonder .

24.

a. where he has gone c. he has gone where John asked me

in English.

a. what does this word mean c. what did this word mean

1. Could you please tell me ?

a what is the time b. what the time

1. Nancy asked me

b. where has he gone d. has he gone where

b. what that word means d. what that word meant

a. why I had not gone/ previous c. why had I not gone / after

27. She asked her boyfriend

a. where was her hat\* c. was where her hat

c. what the time is d. is what the time

to New York the summer .

b. why hadn’t I gone/ following

d. why I had not gone / before

b. where her hat was d. her hat was where

1. Peter said, “Hello, Mary. How are you?”
2. Peter greeted Mary and asked how she was.
3. Peter said hello Mary and how she was.
4. Peter told Mary hello and how she was.
5. Peter said Mary hello and asked how was she.
6. John asked me .

a. when were you born b. when had you born

c. when I had been born d. when I was born

1. John asked Mary that film the night before.

a. that she saw b. had she seen c. if she had seen d. if had she seen

1. John asked me interested in football.

a. if I were b. if were I b. if was I b. if I was

1. “You are an accountant, aren’t you, Daisy?” said John.
2. John asked Daisy was she an accountant.
3. John asked Daisy if she wasn’t an accountant.
4. John asked Daisy whether she was an accountant or not.
5. John said that Daisy was an accountant.

MODULE IS 88

1. He wanted to know for a picnic the previous morning.
2. if we had been going b. that if we had been going

c. we were going d. that we were going

1. He asked his sister .
2. that she needs any help b. whether you need any help

c. if she needed any help d. if did she need any help

1. John asked US not to make so much noise he was working.
2. and that if b. and c. and that d. and added that
3. He asked me Robert and I said I did not know

a. that did I know / who were Robert b. that I knew / who Robert were c. if I knew / who Robert was d. whether I knew / who was Robert

1. Johnny said he had had more money he would have rebuilt his house.

a. if that b. that if c. that d. whether that

1. Mary told me home at that moment she her parents

with the farm work.

1. that if she was / had helped
2. if she were / will have helped
3. that if she had been / would have helped
4. that she had been / would have helped
5. Jane asked her teacher the homework that week.

a. if she had to do b. if she has to do

c. that she must do d. if did she have to do

1. The host asked Peter tea or coffee.

a. whether he preferred b. that he preferred

c. did he prefer d. if he prefers

1. Tim asked Sarah English so.far.

a. she had been learning how long b. how long was she learning

c. how long she has been learning d. how long she had been learning

1. “Teacher, may I go out?” the student said.
2. The student asked his teacher for permission to go out.
3. The student told his teacher to go out.
4. The student suggested his teacher go out.
5. The student wanted to get a recommendation to go out.
6. “Hurry up! Do it quickly!” the group leader .

a. advised b. urged c. agreed d. promised

1. “Waiter, please bring me some more tea,” the customer .

a. begged b. ordered c. promised d. urged

1. “Go on, Susan! Apply the job,” the father.
2. The father invited Susan to apply the job
3. The father denied applying the job.
4. The father encouraged Susan to apply the job.
5. The father wanted Susan not to apply the job.
6. “Let’s go out for a drink,” said Peter.

a. Peter suggested going out for a drink, b. Peter let US go out for a drink, c. Peter promised to go out for a drink, d. Peter thanked on having a drink.

1. Mary apologized the teacher for being late for class.
2. “I will be late,” Mary said to the teacher.
3. “I won’t be late,” Mary said to the teacher.
4. “Excuse me for being late, sir,” Mary said to the teacher.
5. “I won’t be late for the class,” Mary said to the teacher.
6. “ ,” my father advised me.
7. You ought to work harder b. I would rather work harder

c. It is my duty to work harder d. It is worth working harder

1. “Thank you very much for your help, Tom,” said Mary.
2. Mary thanked Tom for helping her.
3. Mary told Tom to help her.
4. Mary wanted Tom to help her and said thanks.
5. Mary would like Tom to help her.
6. “What a beautiful dress you have, Mary!” Peter said.
7. Peter complimented Mary on her beautiful dress.
8. Peter said what did Mary have a beautiful dress.
9. Peter asked Mary to have a beautiful dress.
10. Peter advised Mary to have a beautiful dress.

**MODULE 14|**

**GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES**(Danh động ***từ và*** động ***từ*** nguyên mẫu)

I. GERUND (Danh động từl

Danh động từ (gerund) là hình thức động từ thêm -ing. Danh động từ có thể làm:

1. Chủ ngữ (subjects)

Ví du: Swimming is good for our health. (Bơi lội tốt cho sức khỏe.)

1. \* Tân ngữ (objects)

- Danh động từ làm tân ngữ trực tiếp sau các đọng từ: admit (thú nhận), appreciate **(cảm kích),** avoid **(tránh),** delay **(hoãn lại),** deny (phủ nhận), discuss **(thảo luận),** enjoy **(thích),** imagine **(tưởng tượng),** involve **(có** liên **quan),** keep **(giữ, cứ),** mention **(đề cập),** mind **(phiền),** miss **(bỏ** lõ), post­pone **(hoãn lại),** practice **(thực hành),** recall **(nhớ lại),** recollect (nhở lại), report **(báo cáo),** resent **(không hài lòng),** resist **(phản đổi),** risk (liều **lĩnh),** suggest **(đề nghị),** tolerate **(chịu đựng).**

Ví du: We discussed selling the old car.

(Chúng tôi đả bàn về việc bán chiếc xe hơi cũ.)

He admitted cheating on the test.

(Anh ta thú nhận việc gian lận trong kỳ thi.)

MODULE 14 86

* Danh động từ làm tân ngữ của giới từ.

+ Adjective + preposition + Gerund

+ Noun + preposition + Gerund + Verb + preposition + Gerund

Vi du: Mary is crazy about playing tennis. (Mary rất thích chơi tennis.) There’s no interest in writing letters. (Viết thư chảng có gì thú vị cả) Sue dreams of being a pop star. (Sue mơ trở thành ngôi sao nhạc Pop.) -Danh động từ được dùng sau các cụm từ: be busy, can't/ couldn't help, can't stand! bear/ face, feel like, it's no good/ use, spend time, there's no point in, it's (not) worth.

Vi du: He is busy reading the paper. (Anh ấy bận đọc báo.)

She couldn’t help laughing. (Cô ấy không nhịn dược cười.)

3. Bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ (subjective/ objective complements)

* Danh động từ làm bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ.

Ví du: My favorite sport is swimming. (Bơi lội là môn thể thao yêu thích của tôi.)

* Danh động từ làm bổ ngữ của tân ngữ, sau một số động từ: call, catch, discover, feel, find, hear, get, imagine, keep, leave, notice, see, send, set, stop, watch.

Ví du: I saw him crossing the street. (Tôi thấy anh ấy băng qua đường.)

II. TO INFINITIVE VERB (Động từ nguyên mẫu có TO}

Động từ nguyên mẫu có to được dùng làm:

1. Chủ ngữ (subjects)

Ví du: To swim is good for our health. (Bơi lội tốt cho sức khỏe.)

\* Trong tiếng Anh hiện đại, cấu trúc với chủ ngữ giả it thường được dùng hơn.

1. Tân ngữ (objects)

* To-infinitive làm tân ngừ trực tiếp sau các động từ: afford (có đủ khả năng), agree (đồng ý), arrange (sắp xếp), appear (hóa ra là), ask (yêu cầu), attempt (nổ lực), care (quan tâm), choose (chọn), claim (thừ nhận), decide (quyết định), demand (yêu cầu), deserve (xứng dáng), expect (mong muốn), fail (thất bại), happen (tình cờ), hesitate (ngập ngừng), hope (hy vọng), intend (dự định), learn (học), manage (xoay xở), neglect (sao lăng), offer (cho), plan (có kế hoạch), prepare (chuẩn bị), pretend (giả vờ), prom­ise (hứa), propose (để nghị), refuse (từ chổi), seem (hình như), swear (thề), tend (có khuynh hướng), threaten (dọa), vow (thề), wait (chờ), want (muốn), wish (ước mơ), would like (muốn, thích), yearn (khát khao), urge (thúc giục)

Ví du: We decided to have a baby. (Chúng tôi quyết định cỏ con.)

They plan to go abroad next year. (Năm sau họ định đi nước ngoài.)

* To-inflnitive cung được dùng sau các cụm từ: to make up one's mind, to take care, to make sure, to take the trouble,...

Vi du: I’ve made up my mind to be a teacher.

(Tôi đă quyết định sẽ làm giáo viên.)

* To-inflnitive thường được dùng sau các tính từ diễn tả cảm xúc, phản ứng, và một số các tính từ thông dụng khác.

Ví du: I’m curious to know what he said. (Tồi muốn biết anh ấy đã nói gì.) It’s nice to meet you here. (Thật vui khi gặp bạn ở đây.)

* To-infìnitive dùng sau các nghi vấn từ trong lời nói gián tiếp (ngoại trừ why). Ví du: I do not know what to do. (Tôi khống biết phải làm gì?)

Can you tell me how to get to the bus stop?

(Làm ơn chỉ tôi làm thế nào để đến trạm xe buýt.)

3. Bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ (subjective/ objective complements)

* To-infinitive làm bổ ngữ của chủ ngữ.

Ví du: What you have to do is to work harder.

(Những gì bạn phải làm là học hành chăm chỉ hơn.)

* To-infĩnitive làm bổ ngữ của tân ngừ. sau .đông, từ + tân ngữ: advise, allow, ask, ^assurhe,^6RelieveK cause, ctimflehge^command, chmp’effcon-

riun *x\*)>sider,* enable, encourage, 'exftect, find, foffjiSf force, get, guess, hate, help, imagine, intend, instruct, invite, know, lead, like, leave, lovek mean, need, c^iứiv observe^ order, permit, prefer, persuade, remind, request,™husỊỉềct, teach, tell, Ỹèmpt, think, trust, urg$?understand, want, warn, wish,...

Vi du: My mother wants me to become a doctor. (Mẹ tôi muốn tôi trở thành bác sĩ.)

1. BARE INFINITVE VERB (Động từ nguyên mẫu không **to**I

Động từ nguyên mẫu không to được dùng:

* Sau các trợ động từ tình thái (modal verbs).

Ví du: We must go now. (Giờ chúng tôi phải đi.)

* Sau các động từ: let, make, help, see, hear, feel, watch, notice + tân ngữ. Ví du: We saw her get off the bus. (Chủng tôi thấy cổ ta bước xuống xe buýt.)

The boss made US work so hard. (Ông chủ bắt chúng tôi làm việc nhiều quá.)

But: She was seen to get off the bus.

We were made to work so hard (by the boss).

* Sau help + object có thể là một động từ nguyên mẫu có to hoặc không to.
* Sau các cụm động từ had better, would rather, had sooner và sau why hoặc why not.

Ví du: I would rather stay at home. (Tôi thích ở nhà hơn.)

Why not stay for lunch? (Sao không ở lại ăn trưa?)

1. GERUND, TO INFINITIVE, OR BARE INFINITIVE (Danh động từ, động từ nguyên mẫu có **to** hay động từ nguyên mẫu không **to)**

-bare- inf. (chỉ sự hoàn tất của hành động)

* see, hear, feel,... + **o** + Sy.ịng (chỉ sự tiếp diễn của hành động)

Ví du: Mary heard the boy cough. (Mary nghe thằng bé ho.)

They saw the thief breaking into the house.

(Họ thấy tên trộm đang đột nhập vào nhà.)

MODULE 14 87

• advise, recommend, allow, + object + to-infinitive

permit, encourage, require + V-ing

Vi du: They do not permit US to smoke here.

(Họ không cho chúng tôi hút thuốc ở đây.)

They do not permit smoking here. (Họ khổng cho hút thuốc ở đẫy.)

**<**

+ **to infinitive** (chỉ hành động ở tương lai)

**+ v-ing (Thỉ** hành dộng đã qua)

Ví du: Remember to call Peter. (Nhớ gọi điện cho Peter đấy.)

I remember calling him yesterday. (Tôi nhớ là đã gọi cho anh ấy hôm qua.)

+ to infinitive (ngừng việc này để làm việc khác):

° stop + V-ing (thôi không làm nữa)

Ví du: He stopped to go home early. (Anh ấy nghỉ để về nhà sớm)

He stopped working because he was tired. (Anh ấy nghỉ làm vì anh ấy mệt.)

+ to infinitive (cố gắng - chỉ sự nồ lực)

® try + y„ing ựhử . chỉ sự thử nghiệm)

Ví du: He always tries to learn better. (Anh ấy luôn cố học giỏi hơn.)

Sam tried opening the lock with a paperclip. (Sam thử mở cửa bằng cái kẹp giấy.)

^ + to infinitive (chỉ dự định hoặc ý định)

© mean <c^+ y.Ịng (chi sự liên quan hoặc kết quả)

Ví du: I meant to go earlier. (Tôi đã định đi sớm hơn.)

This new order will mean working overtime.

(Mệnh lệnh mới này có nghĩa là phải làm thêm giờ.)

^ + to infinitive (nghĩa chủ động)

© need + y.ing (nghĩa bị động)

Ví du: You need to do everything with care.

(Bạn cần làm mọi việc thật cẩn thận.)

Everything needs doing (= to be done) with care.

(Mọi việc cẩn được làm thật cẩn thận.)

+ to infinitive (chỉ sự thay đổi của hành động)

© go on <^+ V-ing (chỉ sự liên tục của hành động)

Ví du: She stopped talking about that and went on to describe her other problems. (Cô ta thôi không nói về điều đó nữa mà chuyển sang mô tả một vấn đề khác.)

She went on talking about her illness until we all went to sleep.

(Cô ấy cứ nói măi về căn bệnh của mình cho đến khi chúng tôi đi ngủ.)

© Begin, start, like, love, hate, continue, cannot / could not bear **CÓ**

thể được theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu hoặc danh động từ, không có sự khác biệt về nghĩa.

Ví du: I began to learn/ learning English three years ago.

(Tôi bắt dầu học tiếng Anh cách đây 3 năm.)

They like dancing/ to dance. (Họ thích khiêu vủ.)

He can’t bear being/ to be lonely. (Anh ấy khống chịu dược cô đơn.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. They refused to Tim’s proposal. They decided their work.

a. to listen / continuing b. to listen / to continue

c. listening / to continue d. listening / continuing

1. I enjoy to a number of programs on the radio. I am also fond of

novels.

a. to listen / to read b. listening / reading

c. to listen / reading d. listening / to read

1. No one will leave the classroom until the guilty student admits the money.

a. steal b. stealing c. to steal d. stolen

1. Jack Anderson was caught a match at the time of the fire. He was

accused of the fire.

a. to hold / set b. held / setting c. holding / to set d. holding / setting

1. I cannot imagine you married to Peter. He might make you unhappy.

a. to get / are b. get / being c. got / to be d. getting / be

1. Her boss promised her a raise because she never minds

the night shift.

a. offering / work b. offered / to work c. to offer / working d. offer / worked

1. He disagrees a new car. He prefers by bus to by car.

a. to buy / travel b. buying / to travel

c. to buy / travelling d. bought / traveled

1. The questions are easy . We hope \_\_\_\_\_ high scores.

a. to answer / to get b. answering / to get

c. to answer / getting d. answered / got

1. The man asked me how to the airport. He said he had to

the 9.00 plane to Paris.

a. getting / taken b. to get / take c. got / taking d. get / took

1. You were the last one the office. Did you see anyone the building?

a leaving / to enter b. to leave / enter c. left / entering d. leave / entered

1. It is no use the car. It would be cheaper a new one.

a. repair / bought b. repaired / buy c. to repaừ / buying d. repairing / to buy

1. She wanted home, but her boss made her until the work was finished.

a. to go / staying b. go / stayed c. going / to stay d. to go / stay

13.1 will make an effort .

a stopping smoking b. stop smoke c. to stop smoking d. stop smoking

14. I am not sure if I have met Mr. Martino, but I remember his name.

a. hear b. to hear c. hearing d. heard

MODULE 14 89

1. He will never forget so much money and time on his first com­puter. He bought it two years ago and managed on it himself.

a. spending / to work b. to spend / working

c. spent / work d. spend / worked

1. When I lived with my parents, they did not let me TV at night. I

was made a lot.

a. watching / study c. watch / to study

1. If the printer does not work, try

a to turn / to start b. to turn / starting

1. - Are you thinking of

b. watched / studying d. to watch / studied \_ everything off and then

again.

- Oh, yes. I look forward to

a. being visited / spending c. visiting / spend 19. Everyone likes when they have succeeded

1. turning / to start d. turning / starting London?

my vacation there next summer.

b. visit / spend

1. visiting / spending something.

a. being congratulated / for doing b. being congratulated / in doing c. be congratulating / do d. to be congratulated / to do

1. The police charged him at a wrong space.

a. park b. to park c. parking d. with parking

1. The workers in our company have raised an objection overtime.

a. to work b. to working c. working d. worked

1. We have discussed a new house, but there is no point further.

a. buying / talking b. to buy / talk

c. about buying / to talk d. buy / talked

1. You can open it the wrapping paper.
2. removing d. by removing

overnight at a hotel, but we felt like

b. stayed / continue

1. staying / to continue

lunch. We will go on

a. remove b. to remove

1. He recommended that we

our journey.

a. to stay / continued c. stay / continuing

1. It is twelve o’clock. We should stop our work by 5pm.

- a. having / finish b. have / finishing

1. He warned me a. not to invest
2. I regret the lecture, which was not worth .

a. attending / to listen b. to attend / listening

c. to attend / to listen d. attending / listening

1. The teacher expected Sarah harder. He gave her a lot of homework

a. studied / do b. studying / done c. study / doing d. to study / to do

1. Do you know what if there is a fire in the shop where you go .

a. doing / to shop b. to do / shopping c. do / shop d. do / shopped

1. This advertisement needs . We will have Peter it.

b. redesigning / do

c. to have / to finish d. had / finished

all my money in that company.

b. do not invest c. did not invest d. not investing

a. to redesign / doing c. redesigned / did

d. redesign / to do

1. I remember John promised , but now he was nowhere .

a. hearing / to come / to be seen b. hear / coming / being seen

c. hearing / to come / to see d. to hear / come / been seen

1. My father continued although the doctor advised him the

habit several times.

a. smoking / to quit b. to smoke / quit

c. smoke / quitting d. for smoking / of quitting

1. He has arranged the visitors at the factory. It is necessary that he

on time.

a. to meet / be b. meeting / to be c. meet / being d. met / was

1. I have an important thing you before you this document.

a. told / given b. tell / give c. telling / to give d. to tell / giving

1. She was hesitant the coach of her problem and she thanked her

coach her with the pressure.

a. telling / to help / deal b. tell / helping / dealing

c. told / help / dealing d. to tell / for helping / to deal

1. Thanks to effective birth control methods, women can delay chil­dren and they have more time part in social work.

a. have / taken b. having / to take c. had / take d. to have / taking

1. Avoid those mistakes again when .

a. to make / write b. make / to write c. making / writing d. made / written

1. We will have our house . My cousins will come and help US the work.

a. to repaint/ doing b. repainted/ do c. repainting/ to do d. repainted/ doing

1. We postponed any decision in the meeting.

a. make b. to make c. making d. made

1. I am busy . I would rather not out for lunch.

a. working / go b. to work / to go c. worked / going d. work / going

1. African people are used barefoot so they get very rough skin.

a. to walk b. to walking c. walked d. walking

1. She was so nice that he couldn’t help in love with her.

a. fall b. falling c. to fall d. fallen

1. I do not mind you whenever I finish on my reports.

a. to help / working b. helping / to work

c. to help / to work d. helping / working

1. Jean detested . She often refused her photographs taken.

a. photographed / have b. to be photographed / had

c. be photographed / having d. being photographed / to have

1. I happened John the street yesterday.

a. to see / to cross b. see / crossed c. to see / crossing d. seeing / to cross

1. The robbers forced the bank manager the safe.

a. open b. to open c. opening d. opened

1. Your responsibility includes reservations.

a. take b. to take c. taking d. taken

1. What about home instead of the car?

a. to walk / taking b. walking / to take c. walking / taking d. to walk / to take

MODULE Í4 91

1. The police recommend along that street at night.

a. not walking b. not to walk c. not walk d. do not walk

1. Neil Armstrong was the first in a spaceship. Many people still

recall the scene when he placed his first step on the Moon.

a. flew / see b. to fly / seeing c. flown / seeing d. flying / to see

**MODULE 15**

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS **(So sánh tính từ và trạng từ)**

1. Equality (So sánh bằng)

AS + adjective / adverb + AS  
not AS / SO + adjective / adverb + AS

Ví du: I am as tall as my brother. (Tôi cao bàng anh của tôi.)

He cannot run so/ as fast as his friends.

(Anh ấy khống chạy nhanh bầng các bạn.)

-As much I many (+ noun) as được dùng để nói về số lượng.

Ví du: I have not read as many books as my teacher advises me.

(Tôi không đọc nhiều sách như thầy tôi khuyên.)

John does not earn as much money as his wife does.

(John không kiếm được nhiều tiền bàng vợ.)

- Cấu trúc the same (+ noun) as cũng có thể được dùng.

Ví du: Laura’s salary is the same as mine, or Laura gets the same salary as me. (Lương của Laura bàng lương của tôi.)

1. Comparative (So sánh **Horn!** -

1. So sánh nhiều hơn

* Thêm -er vào sau tính từ/ trạng từ có một âm tiết (short adjective/ adverb) và tính từ có hai âm tiết tận cùng bằng y, et, le, er, ow.
* Thêm more vào trước tính từ/ trạng từ có hai âm tiết trở lên (long adjective/ adverb), ngoại trừ các tính tận cùng bằng y, et, le, er, ow.

short adjective / adverb + ER + than  
**MORE + long adjective / adverb + than**

Vi du: Country life is simpler than city life.

(Đời sống ở nông thôn (Ịcm giản hợn đời sống ở thành phố.)

John works harder than his brother. (John làm việc chăm chỉ hơn anh trai anh ấy.)

Gold is more expensive than silver. (Vàng đắt hơn bạc.)

Jane speaks French more fluently than Mary.

(Jane nói tiếng Pháp lưu loát hơn Mary.)

* Với danh từ: more + noun + than

Ví du: I have more books than Peter does. (Tôi có nhiều sách hơn Peter.) 2. So sánh ít hơn

**LESS** + adjective + than

Ví du: This picture is less valuable than that one.

(Bức tranh này ít giá trị hơn bức tranh kia.)

* Với danh từ: less + noun + than

Ví du: I have less free time than I used to.

(Tôi có ít thời gian rảnh rỗi hơn trước đây.)

III. Superlative (So sánh nha't)

1. So sánh nhiều nhất

* Thêm -est vào sau tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn (short adjective/ adverb) và tính từ có hai âm tiết tận cùng bằng y, et, le, er, ow.
* Thêm most vào trước tính từ/ trạng từ dài (long adjective/ adverb).

the + short adjective / adverb + **EST** the **MOST** + long adjective / adverb

Vi du: Tom is the tallest in our class. (Tom là người cao nhât lớp tôi.) Which watch is the most expensive in your shop?

(Cái đồng hồ nào đắt nhất trong cứa hàng của anh.)

* So sánh nhất được dùng khi so sánh từ ba đối tượng trở lên. Khi trong nhóm chỉ có hai đối tượng, ta thường dùng so sánh hơn.

Ví du: I like Betty and Maud, but I think Maud is the nicer of the two.

1. So sánh ít nhất

the least + adjective

Vi du: This hotel is the least comfortable of the three.

(Khách sạn này ít tiện nghi nhất trong ba khách sạn.)

\* Lưu **ý**

* Much, far, a lot được dùng để nhấn mạnh so sánh hơn.

Ví du: She is much/ far/ a lot more intelligent than I think.

(Cô ấy thông minh hơn tôi nghĩ nhiều.)

* Trong hình thức so sánh, tính từ ngắn đứng trước tính từ dài.

Ví du: My car is faster and more comfortable than hers.

(Xe hơi của tôi nhanh hơn và tiện nghi hơn xe của cố ấy.)

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Hình thức so sánh bất quy tắc | |  |
| good / well | —> better | —>the best |
| bad / badly | -> worse | —> the worst |
| many / much | -> more | -> the most |
| little | -» less | -» the least |
| far | -> farther / further | -» the farthest / the furthest |

MODULE 15 93

IV. Double comparative (so sánh képl

1. So sánh lũy tiến (càng ngày càng)

short adj / adv + **ER** + and + short adj / adv + **ER  
MORE / LESS** and **MORE / LESS + long adj / adv**

Vi du: The summer is coming. It gets hotter and hotter.

(Mùa hè đang đến. Trời càng ngày càng nống.)

He is shooting more and more accurately.

(Anh ta ném bóng ngày càng chính xác.)

The environment is less and less pure.

(Môi trường ngày càng ít trong lành.)

1. So sánh đồng tiến (càng ... càng)

the + comparative adj / adv + the comparative adj / adv

Ví du: The shorter the line (is), the faster the service (is).

(Hàng càng ngắn, phục vụ càng nhanh.)

The more dangerous it is, the more I like it.

(Việc càng nguy hiểm tôi càng thích.)

More, less có thể được dùng với danh từ trong cấu trúc này.

Ví du: The more trees we cut, the more floods we suffer.

(Chúng ta càng chặt nhiều cây, chúng ta càng bị nhiều lủ lụt.) The less you work, the less money you earn.

(Bạn càng làm việc ít, bạn càng kiếm được ít tiền.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.

1. New York is Seattle.

4.

5.

a. larger than

Our house is

a. as big than City life is

b. more large than

yours.

b. as bigger as country life.

a. as busier as b. busier than

Of the two, the round table is .

a. the nicest b. a nice one c. nicer

I feel better than I did yesterday.

a. a little b. more c. a few

c. as larger than d. more larger than c. bigger than d. more big than c. more busier than d. most busy as d. the nicer d. many

1. There is nothing

a. more interesting than c. as interesting than

1. He finds physics

a. far more difficult than c. too more difficult than

travelling abroad.

b. more interesting as d. the most interesting than \_\_ other science subjects.

b. much difficulter than d. more much difficult than

10.

His car is mine.

a. more expensive and faster than c. more faster and expensive than The cuisine of France is

b. faster and more expensive than d. more expensive than and faster than

a. more famous than that of England c. more famous than which of England

Russian is a

a. difficult

b. famous than the cuisine of England d. as famous than that of England language to learn than English is. b. more difficult d. more and more difficult

c. most difficult

1. He has

a. as friends as c. many friends than

1. There are .
2. twice as much computers in our office as there was
3. as twice many computers in our office as they were
4. twice as many computers in our office than there used to be
5. twice as many computers in our office as there used to be
6. Silver is not gold.

a. as much heavy as b. so heavy than

c. more heavier as d. so heavy as

1. I think cow is of all animals.

a. most useful b. less useful c. the most useful d. the more useful

1. The new machines use the old ones.

a. less water and electricity more than b. less water and electricity than c. less water and electricity d. as less water and electricity than

1. Try to do this test. It is than the others.

his sister does.

b. more friends as d. more friends than

a. less difficult c. least difficult

1. Summer is

a. hottest

1. It is one of

b. less and less difficult d. more and more difficult season of the year.

. the hottest c. the hotter d. the more hottest . books I have ever had.

b. the most useful d. the most useful as

19.

20.

21.

a. most useful c. the most useful than Of all athletes, Alex is .

a. the less qualified b. the less and less qualified

c. the more qualified d. the least qualified

Mary was of the two sisters.

a. the clever b. as clever as c. the cleverer d. the cleverest

you get to the cinema, seat you have.

a. The sooner / the better c. The soonest / the best 22. The picnic was

b. The soon / the good d. Sooner / Better I had expected.

a. more a hundred times fun than b. a hundred times fun more than

c. a hundred times more fun than d. more fun than a hundred times

MODULE 15 95

23.

he drank,

a. More / more violent

c. The more / the more violent

24. She is her colleagues.

a. as intelligent than c. few more intelligent than

he became.

b. The most / the most violent d. The less / less violent

b. so more intelligent than d. a lot more intelligent than

25. After three months’ practice, Peter can run

a. fast and fast c. the more and more fast 26. Her husband is she is.

b. faster and faster d. more and more fast

a. ten years older than c. older ten years than 27. Rolls Royce is

b. as ten years old as d. so many ten years older

any other car.

28.

a. much more expensive than c. so much expensive as They are they used to be.

b. as much expensive than d. very more expensive than

b. as less wealthy as d. less wealthy more than they used to years ago. b. as many children as d. more children as . useless things he buys, b. The more / the more d. The most / the most

a. less wealthy as c. less wealthy than

1. Today women do not have

a. as much children as c. as children as

1. money he makes,

a. More / more c. More / the more

1. Because of the heavy rain, the drivers drove .

a. carefully and carefully b. more and more carefully

c. more than carefully d. most and most carefully

1. She is in the staff.

a. the most good b. the far better c. most the best d. by far the best

1. He is ■ person I have ever met.

a. quite the . most intelligent b. far more intelligent

c. far intelligent as d. as intelligent

1. We are involved in charity than they are.

a. most b. as c. as far d. far more

1. He is his wife.

a. twice as heavy as b. as twice heavy as

c. as heavy as twice d. twice as heavy than

1. he insisted he was innocent, they seemed to believe him.

a. The more / the less c. The most / the least

37. Kate is her sister.

a. more nice and intelligent than c. nicer and more intelligent than

b. More / less d. Most / least

b. nicer and less intelligent as d. as nice and intelligent than

1. Among the students in my class, Peter is .

a. most active b. the most active c. the more active d. more active

1. a person wears eyeglasses, on them he tends to be.

a. Longer / more dependent b. The longest / the most dependent

c. The longer / more dependent d. The longer / the more dependent

1. In this summer there are there was last year.

a. so few visitors as b. as few visitors as

c. as few visitors than d. less few visitors as

1. We can satisfy our basic necessities we could in the past.

a. as easily than b. easilier than c. more easily than d. less easily as

1. The organizers hope to raise for charity.

a. more as £6 million b. as much £6 million as

c. as much as £6 million d. as more as £6 million

1. It was to the shops than I expected.

a. far b. farer c. farther d. farthest

1. He was interested in science.

a. the little b. the least c. the less d. least

1. planet to see in the night sky is Venus.

a. The easy b. The easiest c. The more easy d. The easier

1. John’s grades are really bad. ~ Yes, but Tim are .

a. so worse b. badder c. worst d. worse

1. Which country is : Mexico or Costa Rica?

a. big b. the bigger c. bigger d. the biggest

1. Wyoming has even North Dakota has.

a. more few residents than b. fewer residents than

c. fewer residents as d. residents fewer than

1. He spent a year in India and loves spicy food. the food is,

he likes it.

a. The hottest / the most b. The hotter / the more

c. Hottest / most d. Hotter / more

1. Although several methods have been applied, the water seems to be ,

a. more than polluted b. so as polluted

c. more as polluted d. more and more polluted

MODULE 16

**RELATIVE CLAUSES *(Mệnh đề quan hệ)***

Mệnh đề quan hệ (Relative clause), còn gọi là mệnh đề tính ngữ (Adjective clause), được dùng như một tính từ dể bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đứng trước. Mệnh đề quan hệ được đặt ngay sau danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa và được bắt đầu bằng các đại từ quan hệ (relative pronouns) who, whom, which, that, whose hoặc các trạng từ quan hệ (relative adverbs) when, where, why.

MODULE 16 97

Ví du: The woman whom I love best is my mother.

(Người phụ nữ mà tôi yêu thương nhất chính là mẹ tôi.)

1. **Cách dùng đại từ và trạng từ quan hệ.**

* WHO: làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ, thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người.

Ví du: Do you know the man who is standing over there.

(Bạn có biết người đàn ông đứng ở kia không?)

* WHOM: làm tân ngữ, thay thế cho danh từ chỉ người.

Ví du: Peter keeps talking about the girl whom/ who he met last week. (Peter cứ nói mãi về cô gái mà anh ấy gặp tuần rồi.)

* WHICH: làm chủ ngừ hoặc tân ngữ, thay thế cho danh từ chỉ vật.

Ví du: Please recommend me a restaurant which serves seafood.

(Làm ơn giới thiệu cho tôi một nhà hàng bán hải sản.)

* THAT: làm chủ ngữ hoặc tân ngữ, thay cho cả danh từ chỉ người và danh từ chỉ vật.

Ví du: Do you know the man who/ that is standing over there.

Peter keeps talking about the girl whom/ that he met last week. Please recommend me a restaurant which/ that serves seafood. That luôn được dùng sau cụm danh từ gồm cả người lẫn vật, sau các đại từ everything, something, anything, all, little, much, none và dạng so sánh nhất.

Ví du: The firemen managed to rescue the old woman and her cats that were stuck in the burning house. (Lính cứu hỏa đã tìm dược cách cứu bà lão và mấy con mèo của bà bị kẹt trong ngôi nhà đang chảy.) She is the most beautiful girl that I’ve ever met.

(Cô ấy là cô gái đẹp nhất mà tôi từng gặp.)

* WHOSE: chỉ sự sở hữu

Ví du: Peter does not like the secretary whose ideas are contrary to his. (Peter không thích người thư ký có ý kiến trái với anh ấy.)

* WHEN (= on/ at/ in which): thay cho danh từ chỉ thời gian Ví du: Tell me the time when (= at which) we can depart.

(Cho tôi biết thời gian chúng ta có thể khởi hành.)

* WHERE (= aư in/ from/ on which): thay cho danh từ chỉ nơi chốn

Ví du: Do you know the village where (in which) your father was born? (Bạn có biết ngôi làng nơi cha bạn dã được sinh ra không?)

* WHY (= for which): dùng để chỉ lý do, thay cho the reason.

Ví du: That is the reason why (= for which) John refused to come.

(Đó là lý do tại sao John không chịu đến.)

1. **Phân loạỉ mệnh đề quan hệ.**

1. Mệnh đề quan hệ giới hạn (Restrictive relative clause): cung cấp những thông tin quan trọng cần thiết để xác định danh từ hoặc cụm danh từ đứng trước.

Ví du: My father is the man who understands me the most.

(Bố tôi là người hiểu tôi nhất.)

Do you still remember the day when we first met at university?

(Bạn còn nhớ ngày chúng ta gặp nhau lần đầu ở trường đại học khồng?) Đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ who(m), which, that và trạng từ quan hệ when, why có thể được bỏ trong mệnh đề quan hệ giới hạn.

Ví du: He promised to lend me the book (whieh/ that) he bought yester­day. (Anh ấy hứa cho tôi mượn quyển sách anh ấy mua hôm qua.) Peter keeps talking about the girl (who/ that) he met last week. 2. Mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn (Non-restrictive relative clause): cung cấp thêm thông tin về một người, một vật hoặc một sự việc đã được xác định. Mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn cách mệnh đề chính bằng dấu phẩy (,) hay dấu gạch ngang (-).

Ví du: Peter, who is my new friend, is an architect.

(Peter, người bạn mới quen của tôi, là kiến trúc sư.)

They like walking along the Thames, which flows through Lon­don. (Họ thích đi dọc sông Thames, con sông chảy qua Luân Đồn.)

* Không được bỏ các đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ và trạng từ quan hệ trong mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn.

Ví du: She met my brother, whom she later married.

(Cô ấy gặp anh trai tôi, người mà sau đó cô ấy đã kết hôn.)

[NOT She met my brother, she later married.]

* Không dùng THAT trong mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn.

Ví du: Ms. Pike, who is my form teacher, is very nice to her students. (Cô Pike, giáo viên chủ nhiệm.của tôi, rất tử tê với học sinh.) [NOT Ms: Pike, that is my form-teaeher,...]

* Trong mệnh đề quan hệ không giới hạn, which có thể được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho cả câu.

Ví du: Peter failed again, which does, not make us surprised.

(Peter lại that bại, diều này chẳng làm chúng tôi ngạc nhiên.)

**m. Giới từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ.**

Trong mệnh đề quan hệ, giới từ có thể đứng trước đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ của giới từ (whom, which, whose) hoặc sau động từ (ngoại trừ with’ out). Giới từ không được đặt trước who và that.

Ví du: The people with whom I was sitting were very noisy.

[NOT The people with who/ that I was sitting...]

Or: The people (whom/ that) I was sitting with were very noisy.

(Những người ngồi cùng với tôi rất ồn ào.)

Khi giới từ là thành phần của cụm động từ thì không thể đem giới từ. ra trước whom, which, whose.

Ví du: This is the book which I am looking for. (Đây chính là cuốn sách tôi đang tìm.) [NOT This is-the book for which I am-looking.]

**IV. Dạng rút gọn của mệnh đề quan hệ**

Mệnh đề quan hệ có thể được rút gọn bằng cách dùng:

1. Ngữ phân từ (participle phrase)

MODULE 16 99

® Ngừ hiện tại phân từ (present participle phrase) được dùng khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể chủ động (active), diễn đạt hành động đang diễn ra hoặc có tính thường xuyên, lâu dài.

Ví du: My sister is the girl who is wearing a blue dress.

-»My sister is the girl wearing a blue dress.

(Chị tôi là cô gái mặc áo đầm xanh.)

© Ngừ quá khứ phân từ (past participle phrase) được dùng khi động từ trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể bị động (passive).

Ví du: The novel which was written by Peter's father is very interesting. -» The novel written by Peter’s father is very interesting.

(Quyển tiểu thuyết mà bố Peter viết rất hay.)

1. Cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (to-infinitive phrase)

To-infinitive có thể được dùng khi đại từ quan hệ làm chủ ngữ đứng sau first, second, ..., last, next, only, dạng so sánh nhất hoặc để chỉ mục đích, sự cho phép.

Ví du: Tom is the last agent who left the office yesterday evening.

-> Tom is the last agent to leave the office yesterday evening.

(Tom là người sau cùng rời khỏi văn phòng chiều hôm qua.) Please take US to a cafeteria where we can have a delicious meal. -» Please take us to a cafeteria to have a delicious meal.

(Làm ơn đưa chúng tôi đến quán dể ăn một bữa thật ngon.)

1. Ngữ danh từ (noun phrase)

Ví du: Ms Young, who is the school librarian, often lends me reference books. -> Ms Young, the school librarian, often lends me reference books. (Cò Young, thủ thư của trường, thường cho tôi mượn sách tham khảo.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.**

1. To calm his angry girlfriend, John offered an apology Jane did not accept.

a. which b. who c. whom d. when

1. Michelle screamed when she saw the spider dangled from the one

clean bathroom towel.

a. whom b. where c. that d. whose

1. Brian said goodnight to his roommate continued to play video

games until his eyes were blurry with fatigue.

a. Justin, whom b. Justin who c. Justin, who d. Justin, that

1. The children skateboard in the street are especially noisy in the

early evening.

a. who b. whom c. which d. whose

1. We have many blessings for those we are deeply grateful to.

a. whose b. whom c. that d. which

1. Women work are happier than those don’t work.

a. that / whom b. who / who c. whom / that d. whose / which

1. It took me a while to get used to people eat pop-corn during the movie.

a. who b. whom c. whose d. which

1. He is the man I wanted to speak to and name I’d forgotten.

a. whose / whom b. that / which c. who / that d. whom / whose

1. This is the house I lived when I first came to the US.

a. in that b. in where c. where d. which in

1. It was in that house we spent our childhood.

a. where b. that c. when d. in which

1. The family burnt in the fire was immediately given a suite in a hotel.

a. which house b. the house of whom

c. that house d. whose house

1. My friend eventually decided to get divorced, upset me a lot.

a. who b. why c. that d. which

1. I saw a lot of new people at the party, seemed familiar.

a. which b. that c. some of that d. some of whom

1. The reason I have continued to work for that company is the job security.

a. at which b. which c. why d. for that

1. The house I grew up has just renovated.

a. where b. in that c. which d. that

1. The old man and his two dogs \_\_\_\_\_\_ were seriously burnt in the fire last

week have gradually recovered.

a. who b. that c. which d. whom

1. The woman hair is long and curly is the new secretary, Mrs. Chan.

a. who b. whose c. that d. which

1. used to be the tallest building in the world, is still a popular

tourist attraction.

a. The Empire State Building b. It is The Empire State Building, which

c. The Empire State Building, that d. The Empire State Building, which

1. was the first president of the United States, is a symbol of hon­

esty, bravery, and patriotism.

a. George Washington b. George Washington, that

c. George Washington, who d. That was George Washington

1. It was Peter and Mary often came to help me whenever I was in need.

a. whose b. which c. that d. whom

1. failed will have to retake the exam next week.

a. Those b. Those who c. Who d. Those which

1. My favorite month is always February \_\_\_\_\_ we celebrate Valentine’s Day and Presidents’ Day.

a. which b. where c. why d. when

1. Travelling on holiday, I love to do, can be very expensive.

a. which b. that c. when d. where

1. New York is a place people of many different cultures live and

work together.

a. where b. that c. which d. in that

MODULE 16 101

1. I could not remember the person about

talk to him.

you told me, so I could not

1. that b. who c. whom d. which
2. The book author is now being shown in the news has become a bestseller.
3. that b. which c. whose d. whom
4. Recommend me a nice restaurant we can have an Italian dinner.
5. which b. in that c. in where d. where
6. is located at 68th and Park, is part of the City University of New York.

a. Hunter College, which b. Hunter College which

c. Hunter College, that d. Hunter College, where

1. If she cannot find reliable to take care of her children, she may not join US.

a. someone is b. someone which is

c. who is d. someone who is

1. At last they were able to tow up the man and his car crashed down the hill.

a. whose b. which c. who d. that

. great anxiety and stress are called nightmare,

31. Experts all agree that dreams . a. when cause

1. whom cause c. cause d. which cause
2. What’s the name of the person first landed on the moon?

a. which b. who c. whose d. whom

1. Frank Smith, son works fbr US, can provide an estimate.

a. whose b. that c. which d. whom

1. small two-winged insects, can spread fatal diseases like malaria

and dengue fever.

a. Mosquitoes are b. Mosquitoes, which are

1. Mosquitoes, that are d. They are mosquitoes
2. That horrible incident occurred in 1967, I was still a baby.

a. when b. why c. where d. which

1. They are the most beautiful roses .

a. I have ever seen c. that I have ever seen them

1. whom I have ever seen d. where I have ever seen

wife was also famous, was cast as the villain.

1. that d. whom
2. The actor,

a. whose b. which

last week.

38. He is the man a. I met

1. which I met c. whose I met d. where I met

the promotion.

b. whom he had always preferred d. that he had always preferred

1. My boss gave Peter,

a. he had always preferred

1. he had always preferred whom
2. I did not like the book .

a. whom John gave me

c. John gave me

1. The library did not have the book \_ a. for that I wanted b. whom I want
2. The basement is the room

a. where I do b. I do in

1. when John gave me
2. that John gave me it
3. I want d. whose I want

most of my studying, c. in that I do d. I do

1. Frank Zappa, one of the most creative artists in rock ‘n roll, came

from California.

1. was b. who was c. whom was d. that was
2. I have found you the tutor .

a. whom you were looking b. for whom you were looking

c. for who you were looking d. that you were looking

1. He was always coming up with new ideas, most of were absolutely

impracticable.

a. which b. that c. whom d. whose

1. is a quality all human beings have.
2. Creativity may take many forms
3. Creativity, may take many forms,
4. Creativity which may take many forms,
5. Creativity, which may take many forms,
6. in New York lead very busy lives.

a. Those who live b. Who live c. Those live d. Those which live

1. millions of immigrants live, is sometimes called a Melting Pot.

a. New York City, which b. New York City that

c. New York City, where d. New York City

1. The 1960’s was the time many Americans began to question the

actions of their government.

a. which b. when c. that d. where

1. It was in the 1970’s many new rights and freedoms had been gained.

a. when b. that c. which d. in which

**MODULE 17**

**ADVERB CLAUSES** (Mệnh đề trạng ngữ)

**1. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian (Adverb clause of time!**

**Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian bắt đầu bằng: when** (khi), **as** (trong khi, khi), **as long as** (tới khi), **since** (từ khi), **until/ till** (cho đến khi), **while** (trong khi), **as soon as** (ngay khi), **once** (một khi), **whenever** (bất cử lúc nào), **by** (lúc, vào lúc), **before** (trước khi), **after** (sau khi), **every time** *(*mỗi khi), **no sooner ... than** (ngay khi ...thì), **hardly ... when** (ngay khi **...** thì)

**Ví du**: When I arrived, he was talking on the phone.

(Khi tôi đến anh ấy dang gọi điện thoại.)

She was cooking while I was doing my homework.

(Cô ấy nấu ăn trong khi tôi đang làm bài tập.)

**Before you go home, remember to turn of the air-conditioner.** (Trước khi về nhà nhớ tắt máy diều hòa nhịêt độ.)

\* Lưu ý: Không dùng thì tương lai trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian. **Ví du**: I’ll drink a cup of coffee before I leave. (NOT ... **befo**r**e-Hi le**a**v**e)

MODULE 17 103

1. **Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ noi chôn (Adverb clause of place)**

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn bắt đầu bằng: where (ở đâu), wherever (bất cứ nơi đâu).

Ví du: Wherever you go, I am behind you.

(Bạn đi bất cứ đâu tôi củng theo sau bạn.)

Sometimes, he drops by where I am staying.

(Thỉnh thoảng anh ấy ghẻ qua chỗ tôi ở.)

1. **Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do (Adverb clause of reason)**

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do bắt đầu bằng: because, as, since, seeing that, due to the fact that, now that (do, vì, bởi vì).

Ví du: As we forgot to take the map, we got lost.

(Vì chúng tôi quên mang theo bản đồ nên chúng tôi bị lạc .) Because he was seriously ill, they took him to hospital.

(Vi ông ấy bệnh nặng nên họ đưa ông ấy đi viện.)

[NOT Because he was seriously ill, so they-teok him to hospital.] Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do có thể rút gọn thành cụm từ chỉ lý do (phrase of reason), bắt đầu bàng các giới từ because of, due to, owing to.

because of/ due to/ owing to + noun/ pronoun/ gerund phrase

Vi du: Due to the bad weather, the match was cancelled.

(Do thời tiết xấu nên trận dấu bị hủy bỏ.)

I stayed at home because of feeling unwell.

(Tôi ở nhà vì thấy không được khỏe.)

\* Lưu ý: Dùng because khi muốn nhấn mạnh mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do; dùng as, since, seeing that, due to the fact that, now that khi muốn nhấn mạnh mệnh đề chính.

For được dùng như because, nhưng trước for có dấu phẩy (,)

Ví du: John shook, for he was scared. (John run ƯÌ anh ấy sợ.)

1. **Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ (Adverb clause of concession)**

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ bắt đầu bằng: though, although, even though, even if, in spite of/ despite the fact that (dừ, mặc dù)

Ví du: Although the course was difficult, he passed with the highest marks. (Dù khóa học rất khó nhưng anh ấy vẫn dậu điểm cao nhất.) [NOT Although the course-was difficult;-but he passed with ...]

I’d quite like to go out, though it is a bit late.

(Tôi rất muốn di chơi dù đã hơi khuya.)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ có thể rút gọn thành cụm từ chỉ sự nhượng bộ (phrase of concession), bắt đầu bàng in spite of, despite.

despite/ in spite of + noun/ pronoun/ gerund

**Vi du**: The airport is being built despite the residents’ objection.

(Bất chấp sự phản đối của cư dân, sản bay vẫn đang được xây.) In spite of working hard, she failed her university exams again. (Mặc dù học hành rất chăm chỉ, cô ấy vẫn lại thi rớt đại học.)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ cũng có thể bắt đầu bằng no matter, whatever, however hoặc adjective I adverb + as/ though.

Vi du: No matter what you do, don’t touch this switch.

(Bất kể bạn làm gì đi nữa củng không được chạm vào nút này.) Rich as/ though he is, he is unhappy.

(Dù rất giàu, ông ta vẫn không hạnh phúc.)

1. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ cách thức (Adverb clause of manner)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ cách thức bắt đầu bằng: as (như là, giống như là), as if / as though (như thể là).

Ví du: He could not come as he promised.

(Anh ấy không thể đến như đã hứa.)

It looks as if/ as though it’s going to rain.

(Trời trông như thể sắp mưa.)

* As if/ as though cùng có thế được dùng đế diễn đạt một điều không có thật hoặc trái với thực tế.

1. Điều không có thật ở hiện tại

**s** •+ **V** + as **if/** as though + **s** + **V (past simple)**

Ví du: She dresses as if she was an actress. (Cô ấy ăn mặc như thể cô ấy là diễn viên.) -» but she isn’t an actress

He talks as though he knew where she was. (Anh ấy nói như thể anh ấy biết cô ta ở đâu.) -> but he doesn’t know \*Werc cỏ thế được dùng thay cho was (với các chủ từ 7, he, she, it) trong mệnh đề giả định.

Ví du: She dresses as if she were an actress.

1. Điều không có thật ơ quá khứ

**s** + **V** + as **if/** as though + **s** + **V** (past perfect)

Ví du: He talked about New York as though he had been there before. (Anil ta kể về New York như thế anh ta đã ở đó trước đây.)

1. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả (Adverb clause of result)

1. So ... that (quá ... đến nồi, đến nồi mà)

so + adjective / adverb + that

Ví du: He was so tired that he had to stop working.

(Anh ấy mệt đến nỗi phải ngừng làm việc.)

* Đôi khi, đế nhân mạnh, so + adj được đặt ở đầu câu và theo sau là hình thức đảo ngữ của động từ.

Ví du: So terrible was the storm that whole roofs were ripped off.

(Cơn bào khủng khiếp đến nỗi. tất cả các mái nhà bị cuốn bay.) Khi tính từ là many, much, few, little thì có thế có danh từ theo sau.

so + many/ few + plural countable noun + that  
so + much/ little + uncountable noun + that

MODULE 17 105

Ví du: She has so few friends that she often feels sad and lonely.

(Cô ấy có ít bạn bè đến nỗi cô ấy thường thấy buồn và cô đem.) He drank so much wine that he felt sick.

(Anh ấy uống nhiều rượu đến nỗi cảm thấy buồn nôn.)

**so + adjective tat singular countable noun + th**at

Vi du: It was so hot a day that we decided to stay indoors.

(Trời nóng đến nỗi chúng tôi quyết định ở nhà không di đâu cả.) 2. Such ... that (quá ... đến nỗi, đến nỗi mà)

**such (ta / an) + adjective + noun + that**

Ví du: It was such an interesting novel that I have read it three times. (Quyển sách hay đến nỗi tôi đả đọc ba lần.)

It was such good milk that we couldn’t stop drinking it.

(Sừa ngon đến nỗi chúng tôi không thể ngừng uống.)

1. **Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích (Adverb clause of purpose!**

Mệnh đề trạng ngừ chỉ muc đích bắt đầu bằng: so that, in order that (dể, dể mà).

so that/ in order that + **s** + will/ would/ can/ could/... + **V(bare-inf.)**

Vi du: She got up early so that/ in order that she would not miss the

bus. (Cô ấy dậy sớm để không trễ xe buýt.)

Tom booked the tickets early so that/ in order that he could

get the seats near the stage. (Tom đặt vé sớm dể có được chồ ngồi gần sân khấu.)

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích có thể rút gọn thành cụm từ, bắt đầu bằng to-infinitive, in order/ so as (+ not) + to-infinitive.

Ví du: I’m going to Austria to leam German.

(Tôi sẽ di Ảo để học tiếng Đức.)

She got up early so as/ in order not to miss the bus.

(Cô ấy dậy sớm để không trễ xe buýt.)

1. **Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ điều kĩện (Adverb clause of condition!**

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự điều kiện bát đầu bằng: if, provided/ providing (that), supposed/ supposing (that) (nếu, nếu như), unless (nếu không, trừ khi). Ví du: If you do not work harder, you will not succeed.

Unless you work harder, you will not succeed.

(Nếu bạn không làm việc chăm chỉ hơn, bạn sẽ không thành công.)

* Xem phần câu điều kiện (conditional sentences)

1. **Mệnh dề trạng ngữ chỉ sự so sánh (Adverb clause of comparison!**

Ví du: Is it as good as you expected?

(Nó có tốt như bạn mong đợi không?)

It’s colder today than it was yesterday.

(Hôm nay trời lạnh hơn hôm qua.)

* Xem phần so sánh tính từ và trạng từ (Comparison of adjectives and adverbs)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence or that can substitute the underlined part.**

1. you have finished your work, you can go home.

a. No sooner b. As soon as c. While d. Before

1. The whole country was very upset the president was assassinated.

a. before b. until c. when d. as long as

3.

4.

I come, I will call you so that you can pick me up at the station

I arrive at the station.

a. Before / when b. After / until c. As far as / before d. While / till

my mother was cooking in the kitchen, my father was working in the garden.

5.

**6**.

7.

8.

9.

a. While b. As soon as

I have not seen him again

a. after b. as

My grandfather passed away

a. as soon as I would be born c. while I was born We will have prepared everything \_ a. as soon as the meeting will begin c. as long as the meeting would begin

, she often wears in red.

a. After I have met her c. By the time I meet her than his friend called.

c. No sooner d. After

we graduated from the university, c. when d. since

b. since I had been born d. before I was born

b. by the time the meeting begins d. after the meeting began

b. Whenever I meet her d. Until I will meet her

a. He had no sooner arrived home c. Not until he arrived home

b. Before he had arrived home d. As soon as he arrived home

1. , Maria put the dishes away.

a. Since I have washed up b. Until I was washing up

c. After I had washed up d. While I had washed up

1. Put the sign the students can read it.

a. as b. where c. while d. when

there is fire.

12..

a. Where smoke is b. Where is there smoke

c. Where there is smoke d. Where is smoke

, I hope these wishes will reach you and you have a smile when you

13.

read them.

a. When are you b. When you are

1. This credit card is accepted

a. where do you go

c. when you go wherever

1. John failed .

a. because he did not study hard c. due to study hard

1. Where are you d. Wherever you are

b. you go wherever

1. wherever you go

b. since he stopped to study hard d. because of he did not study hard

MODULE 17 107

1. I ordered two pizzas as we were all hungry.
2. when b. while c. because d. soon
3. The conference had to be cancelled a key piece of equipment was out of work.
4. since b. because c. as the fact d. due to the fact that
5. The expedition had to be postponed because there was a typhoon,
6. so as to b. with a view to

c. as long as d. on account of the fact that

1. Tony had little difficulty in passing the examination, he has a

very good foundation in English

1. since b. as c. for d. because
2. you are over 18, you can join the army.

a. As long as b. Due to c. Because of d. On account of

1. Jane joined the English Club .
2. because of she wanted to improve her English
3. because she wanted to improve her English
4. thanks to her improving English
5. due to her improvement of English
6. Since there was no electricity during the storm, .
7. so we have to use candles
8. due to the fact that we have to use candles
9. we have to use candles
10. because of using candles
11. , so he was late for work.

a. Paul had missed the train b. Because Paul had missed the train

c. As Paul had missed the train d. On account of Paul’s missing the train

1. Tom broke the window, he did not feel guilty about it.

a. Although b. Because c. Despite d. In spite of

1. , he passed with the highest marks.

a. Even although the difficult course b. Despite the course was difficult c. In spite of the course was difficult d. Although the course was difficult

1. the car was expensive, he bought it.

a. Even though b. As though c. Despite d. In spite of

1. , Rafael smokes 2 packs a day.
2. Despite of cigarettes are dangerous
3. Though the fact that cigarettes are dangerous
4. Despite the fact that cigarettes are dangerous
5. In spite that cigarettes are dangerous
6. Although she has saved for a long time, .
7. and she can afford that house,
8. so she can afford that house
9. she is not able to afford that house
10. but she is not able to afford that house
11. China has made great efforts to ensure the survival of the panda,

it is still in danger of extinction, a. In spite b. In spite of c. As though

d. Even if

1. Some people are not convinced that there is a serious risk to their health

from smoking tobacco firms put a health warning on every packet

of cigarettes.

1. even though b. but c. despite that d. in spite of
2. Despite the fact that he had ill health .

a. and he continued to work b. but he continued to work

c. he continued to work d. so that he continued to work

1. The traffic was heavy that we could not manage to arrive at the meeting.

a. so b. such c. because d. though

1. There were on the subject that we did not know where to begin.

a. so many books b. so much books c. such books d. such as books

1. She was she was not able to say anything.

a. very upset that b. too upset that c. so upset that d. such upset that

1. Mr. Nelson had he had to borrow me $5 for lunch.

a. so money that b. so little money that

c. such little money that d. such money that

1. He was in he almost pushed me over on the stairs.

a. such a hurry that b. such hurried that

c. so a hurry that d. a hurry such that

1. It was such a boring film that we left the movies before it ended,

a. The film was very boring b. It was so a boring film

c. It was a too boring film d. So boring was the film

1. She'was I could not help looking at her.

a. very beautiful that b. such beautiful that

c. so a beautiful girl that d. so beautiful that

1. Susan has she spends almost all of her time alone.

a. such a few friends that b. so friends that

c. so few friends that d. such friends that

1. everyone in my office likes him.

a. So a helpful employer he is b. He is such a helpful employer that

c. He is so a helpful employer that d. Such a helpful employer he is

1. He drank he had to suffer from cancer.

a. so much that b. so many that c. such much that d. such many that

1. You should keep the milk in the refrigerator \_\_\_\_\_ it does not go bad.

a. as b. so c. so as to d. so that

1. I fixed it everybody could use it.

a. in order that b. in order to c. so as to d. to

1. The teacher explained the lessons slowly .
2. to understand them clearly
3. so that his students could understand them clearly
4. in order to understand them clearly
5. so as his students understand them clearly
6. John got to work early he could finish the report before the meeting.

a. in order to b. in order that c. so as to d. such that

MODULE 17 109

We should conserve the natural resources .

1. so that we can use them for a long time
2. in order to use them for a long time
3. to use them for a long time
4. all are correct

Regular checks are required in order that .

47.

48.

1. safety standards are maintained b. so safety standards are maintained c. to maintain safety standards d. maintain safety standards She worked overtime .
2. in order that preparing everything on time
3. in order that being prepared on time
4. so that everything would be prepared on time
5. so as to being prepared on time

I do not want to hear any more complaints. I have got enough problems it is.

49.

50.

51.

52.

53.

54.

55.

56.

57.

58.

59.

60.

a. as b. so as c. as if d. as though

I will behave toward them I would like to be treated.

a. as b. as though c. as if d. so as to

They all stared at me I had just dropped from Mars.

a. as b. as though c. so as to d. as to

She talked the boss of our office.

a. if only she became b. even if she had become

c. as though she had become d. as if she will become

They were going away without saying anything nothing had happened.

a. if b. even if c. as if d. if only

She looked at me as though she \_ a will not have seen b. will not see

me for a long time.

c. has not seen d. had not seen

My friend is a veterinarian. She treats animals almost .

a. as human b. as if they were human

c. as though they are human d. as they are human

He walked past me .

a. as though I will not exist b. as I did not exist

c. as if I did not exist d. even though I did not exist

I invested the money in that company you suggested.

a. as b. as if c. as though d. so as

The house was in such a mess. It looked .

a. as a bomb had dropped on it c. as if a bomb is dropping on it'

b. as if a bomb has dropped on it d. as though a bomb had dropped on it

She is a student but she is acting ,

a. as though a professional actress b. as if she were a professional actress c. as though she is a professional actress d. as if she is a professional actress Leave everything just you found it.

a. as b. as though c. as if d. though

**MODULE 18]**

**NOUN CLAUSES** (Mệnh đề danh từ)

Mệnh đề danh từ (noun clause) là mệnh đề phụ có chức năng như một danh từ. Mệnh đề danh từ thường được bắt đầu bằng that, whether, if hoặc các nghi vấn từ (who, whose, what, when, where, why, how).

Mệnh đề danh từ có thể làm:

1. Chủ ngừ của câu (subject of a sentence)

Ví du: That he was sacked does not surprise us.

(Việc anh ấy bị đuổi không làm chúng tôi ngạc nhiên.)

Why he left is not our concern.

(Lý do anh ấy bỏ đi không phải là mối bận tâm của chúng tôi.)

1. Tân ngữ của động từ hoặc giới từ (object of a verb or a preposition)

Ví du: I do not know who he is. (Tôi không biết anh ta là ai cả.)

Pay careful attention to what I am going to say.

(Hảy chú ý những điểu tôi sắp nói.)

1. Bổ ngừ của câu (complement of a sentence)

Ví du: The question is how we can get enough money.

(Vấn đề là chúng ta làm cách nào dể có đủ tiền.)

What surprised me was that he spoke English so well.

(Điều làm tối ngạc nhiên là anh ta nói tiếng Anh rất hay.)

1. Mệnh đề đồng cách của danh từ (appositive of a noun)

Ví dụ: A report that the area was dangerous was ignored by the resi­dent. (Cư dân dã phớt lờ bản báo cáo răng khu vực này nguy hiểm.) \* Lưu ý: Không dùng trật tự từ của câu nghi vấn trong mệnh đề danh từ.

Ví du: I couldn’t hear what he said. (NOT I eouldft^-hear what did he-sayr) I wonder who he is. (NOT I wonder who is he.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose ar b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.**

1. Mary's friends do not know .

1. shocked his friends.

a. What did Billy b. What Billy did c.

Billy did d. Bill did what

as if that she cannot swim if that she cannot swim

late for work three times

that he had been late for work three times

that you have done whether have you done

a. even if she cannot swim b.

c. that she cannot swim d.

1. John’s mistake was ,

a. be late for work three times b.

c. had been late for work three times d.

1. We are not responsible for .

a. what you have done b.

c. what have you done d.

[MODULE 18 111](#bookmark7)

1. Everybody was sad .
2. the fact that the president was in poor health
3. why the president was in poor health
4. that the president was in poor health
5. that was the president in poor health
6. You must decide on .
7. to take which English course b. which English course you should take

c. that which English course to take d. which English course should you take

1. The mother called the police and said .
2. which was her son kidnapped b. which her son was kidnapped c. that her son was kidnapped d. that was her son kidnapped
3. I would like to know .
4. to live b. where you live c. how you to live d. where do you live
5. The concert advertisement did not say .
6. when the concert will begin d. when the concert would begin

a. when will the concert begin c. when would the concert begin is still unknown.

10.

a. Mary was sacked c. Why Mary was sacked

1. I wonder .

a. Peter will come

c. that Peter will come

1. Can you tell me 1
2. Was Mary sacked d. Why was Mary sacked
3. if Peter will come d. if will Peter come

b. how much does this shirt cost d. how much is this shirt

a. how much this shirt costs c. this shirt costs how much

1. Could you explain ?

a. a noun clause is recognized

c. how a noun clause is recognized

1. I wonder from the earth.

a. how far the moon is

c. if how far the moon is

b. what a noun clause is recognized d. how is a noun clause recognized

b. how far is the moon d. how is the moon far

1. will always important to me.

a. Whatever you do b. Whatever do you do

1. What do you do d. You do
2. The truth .

a. is that is he unreliable b. that is he unreliable

1. that he is unreliable d. is that he is unreliable
2. , I could see a lot of farms and fields.

a. Where did I stand ' b. From did where I stand

1. Where I stood d. From where I stood
2. was surely fined by the police.

a. Whoever had this done b. Whoever had done this

c. Had this done by whoever d. This had done by whoever

1. There can be little doubt against the law again.
2. for he will offend b. that he will offend

c. for will he offend d. that will he offend

1. affects your weight.
2. What you eat b. What do you eat

c. What are you eating d. What eating

1. The group was strongly persuaded .
2. what you said b. by what you said c. did you say what d. what to say
3. Don’t believe .
4. in the papers do you read b. you read what in the papers

c. what do you read in the papers d. what you read in the papers

1. We are very worried .
2. when is our grandfather going to die
3. as that our grandfather is going to die
4. what our grandfather is going to die
5. that our grandfather is going to die
6. It is a fallacy to assume .
7. the burglars not climb a wall without a ladder
8. that burglars cannot climb a wall without a ladder
9. that burglars not to climb a wall without a ladder
10. can burglars climb a wall without a ladder
11. will determine .
12. How much have experience you got / if can you work here
13. How much have experience you got / if you can work here
14. How much experience you have got / if you can work here
15. How much experience you have got / if can you work here
16. You should be aware ,
17. of how your eating is related with your stress level
18. how your eating is related with your stress level
19. of how is your eating related with your stress level
20. is how your eating is related with your stress level
21. A long vacation is .

a. what Susan needs b. Susan needs

c. what does Susan need d. that Susan needs

1. Frankly speaking, makes US very happy.

a. how are you here b. what are you here

c. you are here d. that you are here

1. All the students wanted to know .
2. why did the teacher suddenly leave the classroom
3. why did the teacher suddenly leave the classroom?
4. why the teacher suddenly left the classroom.
5. why the teacher suddenly left the classroom?
6. The police asked me .

a. I lived where b. did I live where c. where did I live d. where I lived

MODULE 18

Ị1

31. It is unclear

1. whether he shot himself or was murdered
2. that he shot himself or was murdered
3. if did he shoot himself or was murdered
4. whether was he shot himself or murdered
5. is .
6. What bothers me / that my friend is so talkative
7. What do I bother / my friend is so talkative
8. How bothers me / that my friend is so talkative
9. How do I bother / my friend is so talkative
10. I was not sure .

a. which would you like c. whether you would like it

1. Can you guess ?

a. what is his occupation c. that his occupation is

1. is your own business.

a. Do you do

c. What do you do after school

1. did not surprise us.

a. Peter failed his exam c. that Peter failed his exam

1. Mrs. Kramer rang half an hour ago to ask .

a. her cake was ready b. if her cake was ready

c. was her cake ready d. that was her cake ready

1. depends mostly on her test scores.

a. Whether she goes to college b. Whether does she go to college c. If does she go to college d. That if she goes to college

1. A good coach never reveals to other teams .

a. what his team’s weaknesses are c. that his team’s weaknesses are

1. is a mystery.

a. Why isn’t he here today c. Why he isn’t here today

1. Your wage depends on .

a. how do you work b. how you work 42. is not as important as

b. you would like it d. whether would you like it

b. what his occupation is d. that is his occupation

b. What will do after school d. What you do after school

b. Peter failed his exam that d. Peter failed his exam, that

b. his team’s weaknesses are d. that are his team’s weaknesses

b. Why isn’t he here today? d. Why he isn’t here today?

c. you work

d. do you work

1. How many you have read books / do you understand what you have read
2. How many have books you read / Whether you understand have what you read
3. Books you have read / you understand what you have read
4. How many books you have read / whether you understand what you have read

43. I asked myself .

1. whether is margarine healthier than butter
2. is that margarine healthier than butter
3. if margarine is healthier than butter
4. that margarine is healthier than butter or not
5. Scientists have long wondered .
6. which parts of the brain are involved in musical tasks
7. parts of the brain are involved in musical tasks
8. which are parts of the brain involved in musical tasks
9. are parts of the brain involved in musical tasks
10. Please tell me .
11. why you look so worried. b. why do you so worried,

c. why do you look so worried? d. you look so worried why

1. is none of your business.
2. If happened between Julius and me
3. That happened between Julius and me
4. Happening between Julius and me
5. Whatever happened between Julius and me
6. He asked me .

a. what the weather was b.

what was the weather like what the weather like

that he resign why did he resign

what was happening around him what happening around him

had he seen a ghost when had he seen a ghost

c. what the weather was like d.

1. No one is really sure .

a. whether did he resign b.

c. why he resigned d.

1. He seemed to be unaware of .

a. what happening around him was b. c. what around him was happening d.

1. John thought .

a. that he had seen a ghost b.

c. how can he see a ghost d.

MODULE 19

V- 1 J

WORD FORMATION AND WORD ORDER  
**(Cách thành lập từ và trật tự từ)**

**L WORD FORMATIONS (Cách thành lập từ)**

1. Thành lập danh từ (noun formations)

a. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm các hậu tố (suffixes) vào sau động từ (verb), danh từ (noun) hoặc tính từ (adjective).

* VERB + ment/ al

invest -» investment (sự đầu tư) amuse -> amusement (trò vui) approve -> approval (sự tán thành) propose -» proposal (lờỉ để nghị)

* VERB + tion/ atỉon

introduce -> introduction (sự giới thiệu) invent -» invention (sự phát minh) explain -> explanation (lời giải thích)

MODULE 19 115

* VERB -í- ure / age

expose -> exposure (sự tiếp xúc) drain -> drainage (sự tháo nước)

* NOUN + ship / hood

friend -> friendship (tình bạn) brother -» brotherhood (tình anh em)

* NOUN + ism (nói về chủ nghĩa hoặc học thuyết)

capital -> capitalism (chủ nghĩa tư bản)

* ADJECTIVE + ce / ity

important -> importance (tầm quan trọng) mature maturity (sự trưởng thành)

* ADJECTIVE + ness / dom

sick -> sickness (căn bệnh) free -> freedom (sự tự do)

* ADJECTIVE + ism

social -» socialism (chủ nghĩa xã hội) formal -> formalism (chủ nghĩa hình thức) b. Một số danh từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố (prefixes) vào trước một danh từ.

* super / under + NOUN

market —> supermarket (siêu thị) current -> undercurrent (dòng nước ngầm)

- sur / sub + NOUN

face -» surface (bề mặt) standard -> substandard (dưới tiêu chuẩn) 2. Thành lập động từ (verb formations)

a. Động từ thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố (suffixes) hoặc tiền tô (prefixes), vào danh từ, tính từ hoặc động từ khác.

• NOUN + fy

identity -> identify (nhận dạng) symbol -> symbolize (tượng trưng cho)

* VERB + ance /ence

attend attendance (sự tham dự)

* VERB + or / er / ar / ant / ee (chỉ

learn -» learner (7iọc viên) beg -> beggar (người ăn xỉn)

* VERB + ing / y

paint -» painting (bức tranh)

depend -> dependence (sự p/iw thuộc) người)

educate -> educator (n/id giáo dục) employ -» employee (nhản viên)

discover —> discovery (điều khám phá)

beauty —> beautify (làm đẹp)

* NOUN/ ADJECTIVE + ize / ise

social -» socialize (xã hội hóa)

* ADJECTIVE + en

tight -> tighten (thắt chặt) weak -> weaken (làm suy yếu)

* en + NOUN / ADJECTIVE

danger -> endanger (gây nguy lied) rich -> enrich (làm giàu)

* over/ under/ super + VERB

act -» overact (diễn cường điệu) estimate -» underestimate (đánh giá thấp) b. Một số ngoại động từ (transitive verbs) được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố out- vào nội động từ (intransitive verbs), go —> outgo (trội hơn) weigh —> outweigh (nặng hơn)

* Ngoại động từ (transitive verbs) là động từ luôn có tân ngữ trực tiếp (direct object) theo sau.
* Nội động từ (intransitive verbs) là động từ không cần có tân ngữ (object).

1. Thành lập tính từ (adjective formations)
2. Một số tính từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố (suffixes) vào sau danh từ hoặc động từ.

* NOUN + ful / less

harm -» harmful / harmless (có hại / vô hại) use —> useful / useless (có ích / vô ích)

* NOƯN + y / ly

rain rainy (có mưa) year -» yearly (hằng năm)

* NOƯN + al

culture -» cultural (thuộc văn hóa) music -> musical (thuộc âm nhạc)

* NOƯN + ous / able

adventure —> adventurous (mạo hiểm) comfort -> comfortable (thoải mái)

* NOUN + ish / like

self -» selfish (ích kỷ) child childlike (như trẻ con)

* VERB + ive

act -» active (tích cực) attract -» attractive (hấp dần, lôi cuốn)

* VERB + able / ible

accept -» acceptable (có the chấp nhận) reduce -» reducible (có thể giảm)

* VERB + ing / ed

interest -» interesting / interested (thú vị)

1. Một số tính từ mang nghĩa phủ định được thành lập bằng cách thêm tiền tố phủ định (un-, in-, im-, ir-, il-, dis-) vào trước tính từ.

happy -» unhappy (không hạnh phúc) formal -> informal (thân mật) patient -> impatient (thiếu kiên nhẫn) regular -> irregular (bất thường) legal -> illegal (bất hợp pháp) honest -> dishonest (không thành thật)

1. Thành lập trạng từ (adverb formations)

Trạng từ thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm hậu tố -ly vào sau tính từ.

**ADJECTIVE + ly -> adverb"**

quiet -> quietly (một cách yên tĩnh) lucky -» luckily (một cách may mắn) careful -» carefully (một cách cẩn thận)

\* Ngoại lệ: good -> well (tốt, giỏi) hard -> hard (khó khăn, chăm chỉ)

fast -» fast (nhanh) late -» late/ lately (trễI mới đây)

**II. WORD ORDER (Trật tự từ)**

1. Danh từ (nouns): Danh từ thường đứng ở các vị trí

* Chủ ngừ (subject) hoặc tân ngừ (object) của câu.

Ví du: Pollution is harmful to our health.

(Sự ô nhiễm có hại cho sức khỏe của chúng ta.)

I bought the painting yesterday.

(Tôi mua bức tranh này hôm qua.)

MODULE 19 117

* Sau các tính từ hoặc tính từ sở hữu (his, my, her,...).

Ví du: His mother is a good teacher. (Mẹ anh ấy là giáo viên giỏi.)

* Sau enough và các từ chỉ số lượng (much, many, some, any, most, few,...). VI du: We don’t have enough money to buy that house.

(Chúng tôi không có đủ tiền mua ngôi nhà đó.)

Didn’t you borrow some books of mine?

(Có phải hạn đã mượn vài cuốn sách của tôi?)

* Sau các mạo từ (a, an, the), từ hạn định (this, that, each, every, both,...) và các giới từ (in, on, of, with,...). Lưu ý cẩu trúc a1 an/ the/... + Adj + N. Ví du: The dolphin is an intelligent animal.

(Cá heo là loài vật thông minh.)

She was lying in bed. (Cô ấy đang nằm trên gường.)

1. Tính từ (adjectives): Tính từ thường đứng ở các vị trí

* Trước danh từ.

Ví du: She has very modern ideas about educating her children\*.

(Bà ấy có quan điểm dạy con rất hiện đại.)

• Trật tự của tính từ đứng trước danh từ Khi có nhiều tính từ trước danh từ, các tính từ được viết theo trật tự sau:

opinion size age shape color origin material type purpose + N

ý kiến kích thước tuổi hình dáng màu sắc xuất xứ chất liệu loại mục đích

Ví du: a fat old white horse (một con ngựa trắng già, mập mạp)

a beautiful small round black leather handbag (một cái túi xách tay bằng da, tròn, nhỏ, màu đen rất xinh xắn) an enormous brown German glass beer mug. (một cái cốc uống bìa của Đức, to, màu nâu và làm bàng thủy tinh)

* Sau các hệ từ (linking verbs) be, get, seem, appear, feel, taste, look, smell, become và sau keep/ make + object.

Vi du: You look happy now. (Lúc này trông các bạn thật hạnh phúc.) The news made her happy. (Tin đó làm cô ấy vui.)

* Sau too, trước enough và trong cấu trúc so ... that. \*

Ví du: He’s too short to play basketball.

(Anh ấy quá thấp không thể chơi bóng rỗ được.)

He isn’t tall enough to play basketball.

(Anh-ấy không đủ cao để chơi bóng rỗ.)

She was so angry thajt she couldn’t speak. ;

(Bà ấy giận đến mức không nói được.)

* Trong câu so sánh và câu cảm thán với How và What.

Ví du: He is as deaf as a post. (Ồng ta điếc đặc.)

How beautiful the girl is! (Cô gáỉ đó xinh quá!)

1. Trạng từ (adverbs): Trậng từ thường đứng ở các vị trí

- - Sau trợ dộng từ, động từ to be và trước động từ. thường.

Ví du: I have recently meet him at the supermarket.

(Tôi vừa gặp anh ấy ở siêu thị.)

He often goes to bed late. (Anh ấy thường đi ngủ trễ.)

* Trước tính từ.

Ví du: An extremely pretty woman entered the room.

(Một người phụ nữ cực kỳ duyên dáng bước vào phòng.)

* Sau too, trước enough và trong cấu trúc so ... that.

Ví du: She came too late to see him yesterday. (Hôm qua cô ấy đến quá trễ nên không gặp dược anh ta.)

* Cuối câu hoặc đôi khi đứng một mình ở đầu câu và cách câu bằng dấu phẩy. Ví du: We’ll let you know our decision next week.

(Chúng tôi sẽ cho các bạn biết quyết định của chúng tôi tuần sau.) Fortunately, there were enough seats left for the concert.

(Rất may là buổi hòa nhạc vẫn còn đủ chỗ.)

• Vị trí của các loại trạng từ

1. Trạng từ chỉ thời gian (Adverbs of time) thường được đặt ở đầu câu hoặc cuối câu.

Ví du: Can you do it now? (Anh có thể làm điều đó ngay bây giờ không?)

1. Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn (Adverbs of place) đứng sau động từ, tân ngữ và trước trạng từ chỉ thời gian nếu trạng từ chỉ thời gian đặt ở cuối câu.

Ví du: John is standing there. (John đang đứng ở đằng kia.)

I will take you home this evening. (Tôi sẽ đưa bạn về nhà tối nay.)

1. Trạng từ chỉ thể cách (Adverbs of manner) thường được đặt sau trạng từ chỉ mức độ, động từ, tân ngữ, cuối câu hoặc trước tính từ.

Ví du: Jack drives very carefully. (John lái xe rất cẩn thận.)

1. Trạng từ năng diễn (Adverbs of frequency) thường đứng sau động từ TO BE, trợ động từ và trước động từ thường.

Ví du: I am usually busy on Monday. (Tôi thường bận rộn vào thứ Hai.) \* Trạng từ năng diễn có thể đặt ở đầu câu trong trường hợp nhấn mạnh (Xem phần Inversion.)

1. Trạng từ chỉ mức độ (Adverbs of degree) thường được đặt ở sau động từ hoặc ở cuối câu.

Ví du: They like playing golf a lot. (Họ rất thích chơi gôn.)

1. Trạng từ chỉ ý kiến (Adverbs of comment) thường được đặt ở đầu câu.

Ví du: Luckily, I was able to come to the presentation.

(May là tôi đã có thể đến xem buổi diễn.)

4. Động từ (verbs): Động từ thường đứng sau chủ ngữ.

Ví du: I believe her because she always tells the truth. (Tôi tin cô ấy vì cô ấy luôn nói thật.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose ay b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.**

1. The fire-prevention system is by any small increase in temperature.

a. active b. activated c, acted d. acting

1. She was completely because she was wearing a mask and sunglasses.

a. recognize b. recognition c. recognizable d. unrecognizable

MODULE 19 119

1. A laser beam consists of a of pure light.

a. concentrate b. concentration c. concentrative d. concentrating

1. Laser beams have been used for cancer .

a. treat b. treatable c. untreatable d. treatment

1. To in a job interview, you should arrive on time, be well-dressed,

and keep when answering the questions.

a. successfully /calm b. successful /calmness

c. success /calmly d. succeed /calm

1. Air pollution happens when wastes are poured into the atmosphere and the

air becomes and unpleasant to breathe.

a. contaminate b. contamination c. contaminated d. contaminative

1. The practice of is also known as farming.

a. agriculture b. agricultural c. agriculturally d. agriculturalist

1. A (an) home environment can affect a child’ .

a. happiness / behavioral b. happy / behave

c. unhappiness / behave d. unhappy / behavior

1. Isaac Newton laid the for many other discoveries in mathematics and physics.

a. found b. founded c. founder d. foundation

1. The geneticists have discovered the laws of .

a. inherit b. inheritance c. inheritor d. inheritable

1. The most serious cause of pollution is the of industry.

a. develop b. development c. developmental d. developed

1. We earn our by raising cattle and chicken.

a. live b. life c. living d. lives

1. Marilyn Monroe was very in 1960s.

a. famous b. famously c. fame d. famousness

1. That car is .

a. surprisingly expensive b. surprised expensively

c. surprise expense d. surprising expensiveness

1. Smoking has effects on our health.

a. harm b. harmful c. harmfully d. harmlessly

1. Something went with my computer so I could not complete my work.

a. wrong b. wrongly c. wrongness d. wrongfulness

1. He looked at the picture without saying a word.

a. attentive b. attention c. attentively d. attentiveness

1. Vitamin D helps US not only build teeth and bones but also absorb calcium.

a. strong b. strength c. strongly d. strengthen

1. Every day, people dispose waste from both domestic and

sources without paying any attention to the bad results.

a. wanting / commerce b. unwanted / commercialize

c. wanted / commercially d. unwanted / commercial

1. My mother has just bought an washing machine.

a. automation b. automate c. automatic d. automatically

1. Many teenagers are not well- for .

a. prepare / employer b. prepared / employment

c. preparation / unemployed d. preparative / employee

1. They have little about Technology.

a. knowledgeable / Inform b. knowledge / Information

c. knowable / Informing d. know / Informative

1. Railroads, airplanes, cars and highways make it to travel.

a. easy b. ease c. easily d. easiness

1. English provides you with ready access to higher .

a. promote b. promoter c. promotion d. promotional

1. It is very important for children to do something , such as to play

some musical instrument, paint, and play football.

a. create and athlete b. creatively and athletics

c. creative and athletic d. creation and athletically

1. The of automobile has created a demand for petrol .

a. invent / consume b. inventive / consumer

c. inventor / consuming d. invention / consumption

1. We find it to do housework.

a. bore b. bored c. boring d. boringly

1. does not interest me as much as literature.

a. Economics b. Economy c. Economic d. Economical

1. Almost every language in the world has dialects and American English is

no .

a. except b. exceptive c. exception d. exceptional

1. Laura failed to give reasons for her from the meeting yesterday.

a. satisfactory / absence b. satisfy / absent

c. satisfaction / absently d. satisfied / absence

1. John is a student of . He will graduate from the college

next month.

a. medication / medically b. medical / medical

c. medical / medicine d. medicine / medical

1. They found it to solve their problems.

a. impossible b. impossibly c. impossibility d. possibility

1. Efforts to begin the on the bridge began as early as 1928.

a. construct b. constructor c. construction d. constructive

1. The population of Greater London is about 7.2 million (2001 census), mak­ing it the most city in the United Kingdom.

a. population b. populous c. populously d. populousness

1. There are different in school systems today.

a. acts b. actions c. activities d. actors

1. The city lifestyle seems not to get on well with her. She did not get much in everything.

a. success b. succeed c. successful d. successfully

1. We are in of the campaign to end illiteracy among teenagers.

a. support b. supportive c. supporter d. supportively

MODULE 19 121

1. I do not know which picture books are suitable for my little son. Have you

got any ?

a. recommend b. recommender c. recommendation d. recommendable

1. and cultural places in our country should be given appropriate care.

a. History b. Historian c. Historical d. Historically

1. It is important to protect landscapes from the harmful effects of pollution.

a. environment b. environmentalist

c. environmentalism d. environmental

1. China is a huge country, containing a of culture and of landscape.

a. rich / diverse b. richly / diversely

\* c. richness / diversity d. riches / diversity

1. Do not use time and money .

a. care b. careful c. careless d. carelessly

1. To be , I think you have made a wrong .

a. honest / decision b. honesty / decide

c. honestly / decisive d. dishonestly / decider

1. of wildlife is happening frequently all over the world.

a. Destroy b. Destruction c. Destructive d. Destructively

1. Thanks to environmentalists and conservationists, many kinds of

plants and animals are protected.

a. enthusiast b. enthusiasm c. enthusiastic d. enthusiastically

1. Humans have caused a lot of to the environment, and now they have

to suffer from pollution.

a. damageable / seriousness b. damaging / serious

c. damage / serious d. damage / seriously

1. People are more aware of the of music in treating mental .

a. important / illness b. importantly / illness

c. important / ill d. importance / illness

1. Conservation is a more and more of a .

a. necessity b. necessary c. necessarily d. necessitate

1. Most of the wastes from factories are . They are our environment.

a. poisonous / poisoning b. poison / poisoned

c. poisonously / poisoned d. poisons / poisoner

1. Rap music is becoming more and more among teenagers.

a. popularize b. popular c. popularity d. popularly

1. Mary is .

a. a young beautiful girl b. a beautiful young girl

c. beautiful a young girl . d. beautiful young a girl

1. Look at the man who is wearing .

a. a tie dirty old cotton b. a cotton dirty old tie

c. an old cotton dirty tie d. a dirty old cotton tie

1. Peter has just come back from Japan. He gave me

a. a small Japanese serving bowl b. a Japanese small serving bowl

c. a serving small Japanese bowl d. a Japanese serving small bowl

1. Mary has just bought .

a. a big red hat b. a red big hat

1. The concert was performed by

a. an exciting new band French c. an exciting new French band

c. big red a hat d. a hat big red b. a new French exciting band d. a French exciting new band

56. There was

in the middle of the room.

a. a square wooden old table c. an old square wooden table

1. The sculptor needs .

a. a carving steel new knife c. a steel carving new knife

1. On the way to Toronto, I met \_

a. a thin small Canadian lady c. a small thin Canadian lady

1. our neighbors bought a new car.

a. Late last year b. Last year late c. Last late year

1. Portia White was .

b. an old table square wooden d. a wooden old square table

b. a carving new steel knife d. a new steel carving knife who became one of my best friends later, b. a Canadian small thin lady d. a small Canadian thin lady

d. Year last late

a. a famous opera singer c. an opera famous singer 61. David Garrick was

b. a famous singer opera d. a singer famous opera

1. a very eighteenth-century prominent actor
2. a very prominent eighteenth-century actor
3. an eighteenth-century very prominent actor
4. an actor very prominent eighteenth-century
5. Sarah Siddons was I in the 1780s.
6. of her career as an actress at the height
7. of her career at the height as an actress
8. at the height of her career as an actress
9. as an actress at the height of her career
10. He tripped over .

a. in the hallway a box left carelessly b. a box in the hallway left carelessly c. carelessly a box left in the hallway d. a box left carelessly in the hallway

1. The road crew was startled by .
2. the sight of three large deer crossing the road
3. crossing the road the sight of three large deer
4. three large deer of the sight crossing the road
5. three large deer crossing the road of the sight
6. They received because they had studied hard.

a. on their exam high marks c. their marks on high exam

66. He changes and new ideas.

a. is often unwilling to accept c. often is unwilling to accept

b. high marks on their exam d. their exam on high marks

b. is unwilling to accept often d. is often accept to unwilling

MODULE 19 128

1. I often play football .

a. on the garden in Sundays c. in the garden on Sundays

1. We will not spend .

a. at home next year our holiday c. our holiday at home next year

1. for us?

a. How has she been waiting long c. How long has she been waiting

1. I do not understand why some local people insist on having .
2. six different kinds of cupboards in their mustard
3. six different kinds of mustard in their cupboards
4. mustard of their cupboards in six different kinds
5. in their mustard cupboards of six different kinds
6. The vacation my grandparents won includes .

a. trips to twelve European cities b. European cities to twelve trips

c. to twelve European cities trips d. European trips to twelve cities

1. According to the sign, the nearest town is .

a. 60 away miles b. away 60 miles c. 60 miles away d. 60-miles away

b. in Sundays on the garden d. on Sundays in the garden

b. at home our holiday next year d. our holiday next year at home

b. Has she been waiting how long d. How long she has been waiting

73.

were invaded by beetles this summer.

74.

75.

1. The neighborhood in all the gardens
2. In the gardens all the neighborhood
3. All the gardens in the neighborhood
4. The gardens in all the neighborhood

We painted .

a. table the red and chairs the blue b. blue the chairs and red the table c. red the table and blue the chairs d. the table red and the chairs blue , Martha Ballad can communicate in English fluently.

a. Over the course of two years c. Of two years over the course

1. She moved .

a. quite slowly down the aisle c. slowly quite down the aisle

1. She has lived .

a. her life on all the island c. on the island all her life

1. She goes to work .

b. Over of two years the course d. Of over two years the course

b. down the aisle slowly quite d. the aisle quite slowly down

b. the island on all her life d. on her life all the island

b. by boat on the mainland every day d. every day by boat on the mainland

a. on the mainland every day by boat c. on the mainland by boat every day

1. I to my brother without a good reason.

a. have written rarely b. written have rarely

c. have rarely written d. rarely have written

1. Beth swims .

a. enthusiastically every morning to keep in shape in the pool

1. enthusiastically in the pool every morning to keep in shape
2. every morning to keep in shape enthusiastically in the pool
3. to keep in shape every morning enthusiastically in the pool
4. Mr. Pike walks to get a newspaper.
5. before supper into town every afternoon patiently
6. patiently into town every afternoon before supper
7. into town every afternoon patiently before supper
8. before supper every afternoon into town patiently
9. My father takes a leisure walk .
10. before breakfast every day of his life b. every day before breakfast of his life c. breakfast before every day of his life d. of his life every day before breakfast I was born .

83

1. in a small house on the plains of northern Nebraska
2. on the plains in a small house of northern Nebraska
3. on the plains of northern Nebraska in a small house
4. in northern Nebraska of a small house on the plains

Jesse filled the coffee cup up to the brim, even above the brim.

a. enough not big b. big not enough I have .

84.

a. Ever so slowly, carefully, c. Slowly, so ever carefully,

1. She promised to meet him \_ a. for next lunch Tuesday

c. next lunch for Tuesday

1. These shoes are .

87.

a. special something to tell you c. something special to tell you

1. She does not earn .

a. money enough to support her family c. to support her family enough money

1. She didn’t .

a. run enough fast to win c. run to win fast enough

1. Dry the car .

a. with a towel soft fluffy carefully c. with a carefully soft fluffy towel

1. They walked .

a. at home slowly night c. slowly home at night

1. We \_\_\_\_\_

a. have never visited London before c. have never before visited London

1. My book is .

a. nor in my bag neither on the shelf c. neither in the shelf nor on my bag

1. Carefully, slowly, ever so, d. Slowly, ever so carefully,
2. for lunch next Tuesday d. Tuesday next for lunch
3. not enough big d. not big enough

b. to tell you special something

1. to tell something special you

b. enough money to support her family d. to support her family money enough

b. run fast enough to win d. run to win enough fast

b. with a soft fluffy carefully towel d. carefully with a soft fluffy towel

b. home at slowly night d. home slowly at night

b. have visited London never before d. never have visited London before

b. neither in my bag nor on the shelf d. in my bag nor on the shelf neither

MODULE 1» 125

1. The people .
2. in the line moved incredibly quickly b. in the line moved quickly incredibly c. incredibly in the line moved quickly d. moved quickly in the line incredibly
3. Juan made an appointment to see his doctor .
4. on the first at two o’clock of Thursday, July next summer
5. at two o’clock on the first Thursday of next July summer
6. at two o’clock on the first Thursday of July next summer
7. on the first Thursday of July at two o’clock next summer
8. this kind of talent on a small-town high school baseball team.

a Do rarely we see b. Do we see rarely c. Rarely do we see d. Rarely we do see

1. She wrote .

a. unusually neatly the report b. the report neatly unusually

c. unusually the report neatly d. the report unusually neatly

1. , he could not manage to avoid the accident.

a. Carefully as drove he b. Carefully as he drove

c. He drove as carefully d. As he drove carefully

1. Beach erosion is that is destroying or removing sand from a beach.
2. the act either or a human of weather factor
3. either a human or weather factor of the act
4. the act of either a human or weather factor
5. the act of or a human either weather factor
6. He usually meets his friends .

a. at the pub after dinner b. after dinner at the pub

c. after the pub at dinner d. the pub after at dinner

**MODULE 20**

QUESTIONS **(Câu hot)**

1. YES-NO QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi Có-Không)

Câu hỏi có-không bắt đầu bằng một trợ động từ (do, be, have, modal verbs) hoặc động từ to be.

Axiliary/ Be + subject ...?

**Ví du**: Are you a student? ~ Yes, I am./ No, I am not

(Bạn có phải là sinh viên không? ~ Phải. /Không phải.)

Did Peter go with you? ~ Yes, he did./ No, he didn’t.

(Có phải Peter đã đi với' bạn không? ~ Phải. / Không. )

Has Mary come home yet? ~ Yes, she has./ No, she hasn’t.

(Mary về nhà chưa? ~ Rồi. / Chưa.)

1. WH-QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi WH1

Câu hỏi wh- bắt đầu bằng các nghi vấn từ (question words): who, whom, whose, where, when, which, what, why, how, how far, how long, how many,v.v.

Question word + auxiliary / be + subject...?

Vi du: What is John doing? ~ He is reading.

(John đang làm gì vậy? ~ Anh ấy dang đọc sách.)

Why were you absent yesterday? ~ Because I was ill.

(Tại sao bạn vắng mặt hôm qua? ~ Vì tôi bị bệnh)

How often do you go shopping? ~ Once a week.

(Bao lâu bạn đi mua sắm một lần? ~ Mỗi tuần một lần.)

Lưu ý: Khi đặt câu hỏi cho chủ từ, trật tự từ giống câu trần thuật.

Ví du: Who helped you with your work? (Ai giúp bạn làm việc?)

What will happen next? (Chuyện gì sẽ xảy ra tiếp theo?)

1. **OR-QUESTIONS (Câu hổi lựa chọn)**

Câu hỏi lựa chọn bắt đầu bằng động từ to be hoặc trợ động từ (be, do, have, will, v.v) và có liên từ or.

Ví du: Are you a worker or a driver? ~ I am a driver.

(Bạn là công nhân hay là tài xế? ~ Tôi là tài xể.)

Would you like coffee or tea? ~ I’d like coffee.

(Bạn thích cà phê hay trà? ~ Tôi thích cà phê.)

1. **TAG QUESTIONS (Câu hỏi đuôi)**

Câu hỏi đuôi được thành lập bằng một trợ động từ (hoặc động từ be) và một đại từ nhân xưng.

auxiliary verb (+ not) + pronoun?

* Câu trần thuật xác định -» câu hỏi đuôi phủ định
* Câu trần thuật phủ định -» câu hỏi đuôi xác định

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Statement | Tag question |
| Affirmative (Khẳng định) | Negative (Phủ định) |
| Negative (Phủ định) | Affirmative (Khẳng dịnh) |

Ví du: John is at work, isn’t he? (John dang làm việc phải không?) You did not go to school yesterday, did you?

(Hôm qua bạn không có di học phải không?)

\* Một số trường hợp ngoại lệ:

Open the door, will you? (Mở giúp cửa dược không?)

I am right, aren’t I? (Tôi đúng phải không?)

Let’s go out, shall we? (Chúng ta di chơi dược không?)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose af by c, or d that best completes the sentence.**

1. What ?

a. does your company produce b. your company produces

c. does your company produces d. do your company produce

MODULE 20 127

►

**2**.

\_? - It is sunny.

3.

4.

a. How is the weather like b. What does the weather like

c. What is the weather like d. How does the weather like

can we meet? - At three o’clock tomorrow.

a. Why b. When c. What d. Whom

glass is yours? - The empty one.

5.

6.

7.

**8**.

b. Which It’s my father’s, a. Who is the car b. What is the car

If you were me, ?

a. what would you do c. what do you would

? - I will have coffee.

a. Will you have coffee c. Would you like tea or coffee ? - In a pool.

How

? \_

a. Can you swim c. Is Peter swimming

1. Did John go to work or to school? a. No, he didn’t b. Not yet
2. When does your class finish? -

a. By Mr. Pike, our form teacher

c. In the hall

1. Where is your pencil? - .

a. With my right hand

c. Because it has lost

c. Whom

d. Whose

1. Whose car is it d. Which is the car

b. what you would do

1. what would do you

b. What are you doing d. Would you like coffee

b Where do you often go swimming d. How often do you go swimming

c. To work

d. Yes, he did

b. Not very often d. At 11 o’clock

b. In my handbag d. Although it is expensive

1. Has Peter clean the floor yet? - .

a. Not yet b. No, he doesn’t c. Yes, he does

1. Would you like to drink something? - .

d. Yes, he is

14.

a. No, thanks

c. I like coffee better than tea the advertisement in?

a. Which paper you have seen c. Which paper did you see

15. How do they go shopping?

a. much b. long

16.

with his work yesterday?

b. I drank tea d. I am full

1. Which did paper you see d. Which paper you saw

- Twice a week.

1. often d. far

John did.

b. Who helped Peter

1. Who did helped Peter

a. Who did Peter help c. Whom did Peter help

1. before cars and trains were invented?

a. Which was means of transport used b. Which means of transport was used c. Which did means of transport used d. Which did means of transport use

1. ? - It is the system of paying for goods or services with other goods

or services instead of using money, a. How is barter b. Which barter is

c. What barter is d. What is barter

19.

for grading eggs?

a. Be can this device used b. Can be used this device

c. Can be this device used d. Can this device be used

20. ? - He is tall and handsome with a charming smile.

a Has the newcomer got a charming smile b. What does the newcomer look

d. How does the newcomer look

21

c. Whose is the newcomer’s ? - J-O-H-N.

22.

b. Do they name their son Johnv d. What do you mean

did you buy so much food? - To serve some guests tonight.

b. When c. Why d. Where

everything been OK?

b. Is c. Has d. Did

did the machine run? - Perfectly.

b. What c. Which d. When

to speak? - The manager.

a. To whom did the reporter want b. To who did the reporter want

c. To whom the reporter wanted d. What did the reporter want

you found the book you wanted?

b. Did c. Have d. Are

everyone listening to the lecturer attentively?

b. Has c. Does d. Was

our uniforms? - No, we needn’t.

a. How do you spell your name? c. Which does your name

a. How

23.

a. Does

24.

a. How

25.

26.

a. Do

27.

a

28.

29.

Are

a. Do we should wear

c. Are we must wear

? - By Charles Dickens.

b. Must we wear d. Need we wear

b. By whom this novel was written d. Was whom this novel written by

a. By whom was this novel written c. By was whom this novel written

1. Has the pollution been solved by those environmentalists? - .

a. Yes, they have b. No, they haven’t c. Yes, it does d. No, it hasn’t

1. ? - To enter Cambridge University.
2. What university is John learning English
3. Why does John learn English
4. How is John learning English
5. Where is John learning English
6. What size are you? - .

33.

Thirty-six years old Thirty-six . yet?

a. Have the letters been sent c. Have been the letters sent

1. do you often go to work?

a. How b. How long

1. is the device used for? -

a. When b. Why

b. Thirty-six miles d. Thirty-six meters

1. Have been sent the letters d. Have sent the letters been

- By car.

1. How far d. How much

For counting money.

c. What d. Which

MODULE 20 129

d. Did



1. you interested in the book I lent you?

a. Do b. Have c. Are

1. call me soon?

a. Why haven’t you b. Why you don’t c. Why aren’t you d. Why didn’t you

1. it your responsibility to solve the problem? - Of course not.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| a. Has b. Was | c. Does | d. Will |
| 39. a new computer? |  |  |
| a. Ought we to buy | b. Do we ought to buy | |
| c. Will we ought to buy | d. Have we ought to buy | |
| 40. Don’t make the mistake again. | ? |  |
| a. do you b. mustn’t you | c. won’t you | d. will you |
| 41. Peter’s a new carT ? |  |  |
| a. is he b. isn’t he | c. hasn’t he | d. does he |
| 42. Economics is not taught at high school. ? | |  |
| a. isn’t it b. is it | c. are they | d. does it |
| 43. The film was not really good, | ? |  |
| a. does it b. does not it | c. was it | d. was not it |
| 44. You used to live in New York. | ? |  |
| a. were not you b. did you | c. don’t you | d. didn’t you |
| 45. Pollution causes many diseases, | ? |  |
| a. does it b. doesn’t it | c. do they | d. don’t they |
| 46. Give me a hand. ? |  |  |
| a. will you b. do you | c. don’t you | d. don’t I |
| 47. Let’s do something to help Peter, | ? |  |
| a. will we b. do you | c. shall we | d. have we |
| 48. I think Peter won’t come with US, | ? |  |
| a. do I b. does he | c. will I | d. will he |
| 49. I am responsible for the preparation. | |  |
| a. am not I b. aren’t I | c. am I | d. do I |
| 50. We have not got enough food for the dinner, | | ? |
| a. do we b. don’t we | c. have we | d. will we |

**PHRASES** (Cụm từ)

Cụm từ là một nhóm từ hay đoạn câu mà những từ trong đó có liên hệ với nhau.

1. Cụm động từ nguyên mẫu (infintive phrase): bắt đầu bằng một động từ nguyên mẫu. Cụm động từ nguyên mẫu được dùng như:

- Danh từ (noun)

Ví du: To save money now seems impossible.

It seems impossible to save money now. (Có vẻ như bây giờ chưa thể để dành tiền dược.) [làm chủ từ cho seems]

* Tính từ (adjective)

Ví du: He always has a lot of money to spend on his foreign trips.

(Anh ta luôn có nhiều tiền để chi cho các chuyến đi nước ngoài.) [bổ nghĩa cho danh từ money]

* Trạng từ (adverb)

Ví du: She went home to get her books. (Cô ấy uề nhà để lấy sách.) [bổ nghĩa cho động từ went]

1. Cụm danh dộng từ (gerund phrase): bắt đầu bằng một danh động từ (V-ing). Cụm danh động từ được dùng như một danh từ, làm chủ ngữ của câu, tân ngữ cho động từ và giới từ, bổ ngữ cho chủ ngữ và tân ngữ, hoặc làm động cách từ cho danh từ. (Xem phần Infinitives & Gerunds)

Ví du: Smoking cigarettes is bad for health.

(Hút thuốc có hại cho sức khỏe.)

He’s finished mending the car. (Anh ấy đã sửa xe xong.)

1. Cụm giới từ (prepositional phrase): bắt đầu bàng giới từ và sau đó là một danh từ hay đại từ (làm tân ngữ cho giới từ đó). Cụm giới từ được dùng như:

* Tính từ (bổ nghĩa cho danh từ)

Ví du: The woman in red dress is my aunt.

(Người phụ nữ mặc đầm đỏ là dì tôi.)

* Trạng từ (bổ nghĩa cho động từ và tính từ)

Ví du: John is standing by the gate. (John đang đứng ở cổng.)

They were very curious about the people who lived upstairs. (Họ rất tò mò về những người sống ở tầng trên.)

1. Cụm phân từ (participle phrase): bắt đầu bằng hiện tại phân từ (present participle) hoặc quá khứ phân từ (past participle).

a. Cụm hiện tại phân từ (present participle phrase) được dùng để rút gọn khi:

* Hai hành động có cùng chủ ngữ xảy ra đồng thời hoặc liên tiếp nhau và ở dạng chủ động (active).

Ví du: The boy was running down the hill. He was chasing the cat.

-» The boy was running down the hill, chasing the cat.

(Cậu bé chạy xuống đồi, đuổi theo con mèo.)

Mary saw an accident. She called the police immediately.

-> Seeing an accident, Mary called the police immediately.

(Thấy tai nạn, Mary lập tức gọi cảnh sát.)

* Hành động có tính thường xuyên, lâu dài.

Ví du: The woman who lives next door is nice.

-» The woman living next door is nice.

(Người phụ nữ sống ở nhà kế bên rất tử tế.)

**\* Lưu ý:**

When we turned the corner, the view was quite different.

Turning the corner, we had a different view.

(Rẽ ở ngã ba, chủng tôi thấy quang cảnh hoàn toàn khác.)

[NOT Turning-the-corner, the view was quite different.]

MODULE 21 131

- Dùng HAVING + PAST PARTICIPLE để nhấn mạnh tính hoàn tất của hành động xảy ra trước.

Ví du: Having finished the work, Peter went out for lunch.

(Làm xong công việc, Peter ra ngoài ăn trưa.)

1. Cụm quá khứ phân từ (past participle phrase) được dùng để rút gọn câu ở dạng bị động (passive).

Ví du: My house was built for more than thirty years ago. It needs repairing.

-> Built for more than thirty years ago, my house needs re­pairing. (Được xây cách dây 30 năm, nhà của tôi cần dược tu sửa.) 5. Cụm trạng từ (adverb phrase): thường bắt đầu bằng một giới từ và sau đó là một danh từ, đại từ hoặc trạng từ (preposition + noun/ pronoun/ adverb). Cụm trạng từ có được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho động từ, tính từ hoặc một trạng từ khác.

Ví du: He stood in the doorway. (Anh ta đứng ở cửa.)

Cụm trạng từ được rút gọn từ các mệnh đề trạng ngữ (Xem phần Adverb Clauses)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence or that can substitute the under­lined part.**

1. After he had gone to Japan, he went to Korea.

a. Going to Japan b. After Japan

c. To have gone to Japan d. To go to Japan

1. When she found the door unlocked, Mary opened it cautiously,

a. The door unlocked b. When the door unlocked

1. On finding the door unlocked d. Found the door unlocked
2. I I went downstairs to see what happened.

a. Heard some strange noise b. Hearing some strange noise

c. When heard some strange noise d. As to hear some strange noise

1. The building could be entered .

a. being replaced the broken lock b. for being replaced the broken lock

c. after replacing the broken lock d. after being replaced the broken lock

1. , Lee decided to tell Susan the truth.

a. He thinking hard and long b. Thought hard and long

c. To think long and hard d. Having thought long and hard

1. As you are a doctor, you have to take responsibility for human life.

a. As a doctor b. To be a doctor c. On being a doctor d. For a doctor

1. The carpenter hit the nail 1\_.

a. being a hammer b. with a hammer c. by a hammer d. to be a hammer

1. , books on the subject must be read.

a. To find the solution b. For you to find the solution

c. Finding the solution d. For you found the solution

1. I was born and brought UP in the highlands. I am used to cold weather.
2. As being born and brought up in the highlands,
3. To be born and bring up in the highlands
4. Being born and bringing up in the highlands
5. Born and brought up the highlands,
6. John decided to quit his job.
7. On discouraging by long hours’ working and low pay
8. Discouraging by long hours’ working and low pay
9. To be discouraged by long hours’ working and low pay
10. Discouraged by long hours’ working and low pay
11. , he has become very skillful in the trade.
12. Being train for two years
13. Been trained for two years
14. After having trained for two years
15. After having been trained for two years
16. The cat leaped onto the window sill and meowed.
17. with its burning eyes b. burning eyes

c. to burn its eyes d. eyes burnt

1. Daisy’s goal in life, , is within her grasp this year.

a. became a doctor b. become a doctor

c. to become a doctor d. when becoming a doctor

1. The hills were long.

a. to across the valley b. that crossing the valley

c. across the valley d. it is across the valley

15 he gave up.

1. Realized that there was no hope to save his business,
2. Realizing that there was no hope to save his business,
3. No hope to save his business,
4. To be hopeful to save his business,
5. As she saw such a terrible scene, she fainted.

a. Seeing such a terrible scene b. Seen such a terrible scene

c. To see such a terrible scene d. As such a terrible scene

1. , she tried to console me.

a. When surprising at my reaction b. Surprised at my reaction

c. Being her surprise at my reaction d. With her surprising at my reaction

1. I was amazed when I learnt that John had failed again.

a. On amazed, b. Amazing c. To my amazement d. For my amazing

1. Many families break up .

a. because a lack of money b. because of they lack money

c. because of a lack of money d. since a lack of money

1. A lot of people are unhealthy as they have bad diets.

a. due to their bad diets b. because their bad diets

c. of their bad diets d. for their bad diets

1. the tardiness of my response, I was not allowed to enter the institution.

a. Because b. Because of c. Since d. As

MODULE 21 133

1. The progress’ science and technology
2. Thanks to the progress of science and technology
3. As for the progress of science and technology
4. Because the progress of science and technology
5. Many shops are doing badly since there is an economy depression.
6. as an economy depression
7. in spite of an economy depression
8. thanks for being an economy depression
9. because of an economy depression
10. Although they were tired they stayed until they found out exactly what had happened
11. Despite they were tired b. Even if tiredness

c. In spite of being tired d. As they were tired

1. Bad as her health was, her continued working.
2. as though her health was bad b. despite of her bad health c. despite her health was bad d. in spite of her bad health
3. , people continue to spend hours lying in the sun in the middle of the day.
4. Although warning about the potential danger of sunbathing
5. In spite of warning about the potential danger of sunbathing
6. Despite they are warned about the potential danger of sunbathing
7. Despite being warned about the potential danger of sunbathing
8. Kelvin changed his major from Geography to Business Studies .
9. so as to his job prospects will be improved
10. in order to his job prospects will be improved
11. in order that improve his job prospects
12. in order to improve his job prospects

I felt nervous, but kept it to myself a. so as not to worry my friends c. in order I did not worry my friends What do I have to do ?

28

b. so that not worry my friends d. in order to my friends were not worried

29

b. in order that convince them d. so as to convince them

a. so that convince them c. so to convince them

1. Sally brought a painting home from school .

a. shown to her mother b. to show to her mother

c. and show to her mother d. she showing to her mother

1. , we would not have got any achievement last year.

a. As your recommendation b. If to recommend

c. To be recommended d. Without your recommendation

1. But for Kevin’s assistance, we would not have completed our term before the deadline,

a. If Kevin had not assisted me b. If Kevin did not assist me

c. Unless Kevin had not assisted me d. Provided that Kevin does not assist me

1. , the bird may abandon the nest.

a. As if they are disturbed c. When disturbing

b. If disturbed d. On disturb

1. Unless you had interfered with mv work. I would have been successful.
2. Due to your interference with my work
3. As to your interference with my work
4. With your interference with my work
5. Without your interference with my work
6. Papers which are submitted late will be marked down one grade.
7. submit late b. submitting late c. to submit late d. submitted late
8. The people who are from Iowa are especially nice.

a. from Iowa b. to be from Iowa

c. being from Iowa d. are from Iowa

1. The bomb that was buried in the sand exploded violently.

a. was buried in the sand b. to be buried in the sand

c. burying in the sand d. buried in the sand

1. The student who scored the highest in math was praised by the professor,

a. score the highest in math b. scoring the highest in math

c. to score the highest in math d. scored the highest in math

1. John was the first student of our school who studied at Oxford University, a. studied at Oxford University b. studying at Oxford University

c. to study at Oxford University d. he studied at Oxford University

1. We have a lot of things that we have to do. so we cannot find time when we

can go out with you.

a. do / going out with you b. to do / to go out with you

c. doing / gone out with you d. done / go out with you

1. Mary has just taken US to a bookstore where we can the books we want,

a. buy the books we want b. buying the books we want

c. to buy the books we want d. bought the books we want

1. Look! The boy who is wearing a white cap is my son.

a. wearing a white cap b. to wear a white cap

c. worn a white cap d. wear a white cap

1. I went shopping and I also visited the museum when I visited London,

a. So going shopping, b. To go shopping,

c. Thanks to going shopping d. In addition to going shopping,

1. Bill Clinton, who is the former president of the USA, is from Arkansas.
2. the former president of the USA
3. to be the former president of the USA
4. being the former president of the USA
5. been the former president of the USA
6. The money which had been placed on the table was mine,

a. placing on the table b. to place on the table

c. placed on the table d. place on the table

1. John decided to quit job because he had performed badly.

a. before dismissing him b. before being dismissed

c. as dismissed him d. to dismiss him

MODULE 21 Ỉ35

1. I am so nervous that I really do not know .
2. doing what b. what doing c. what to do d. what done
3. We must make a careful preparation, for the future may bring unexpected changes.
4. due to unexpected changes in the future
5. in spite of future unexpected changes
6. when bringing unexpected changes in the future
7. brought unexpected changes in the future
8. , we cannot go with you.

a. As a conference at 9 o’clock b. To be conference at 9 o’clock

c. Being the conference at 9 o’clock d. With the conference at 9 o’clock

1. They had to stop their project .

a. to be financial difficulties b. being financial difficulties

c. in addition to financial difficulties d. owning to financial difficulties

**MODULE 22**

**INVERSION** (Phép đảo)

Phép đảo của động từ là sự đảo ngược vị trí giữa động từ/ trợ động từ và chủ ngữ (nếu trong câu không có trợ động từ thì phải mượn trợ động từ to do). Hình thức đảo ngừ được dùng khi:

1 Trạng từ, trạng ngữ phủ định, hoặc các từ giới hạn (hardly, seldom, rarely, never, little,...) được đặt ở đầu câu đế nhấn mạnh.

Ví du: Seldom have I seen such an interesting film.

(Hiếm khỉ tôi xem được một bộ phim hay như vậy.)

Not a single word did she say. (Cô ấy chẳng nói gì cả.)

At no time did he get permission for what he wanted to do. (Không khi nào anh ấy dược phép làm những điều anh ấy muốn.) © Một số trạng từ, trạng ngữ thường được theo sau bởi hình thức đảo ngữ: never, rarely, seldom, little, hardly... when, scarcely... when, no sooner... than, only by, only in this way, not only... but also..., only then, not (even) once, not often, on no account, in no way, under no circumstances, by no means, at no time, nowhere (else), v.v.

\* Lưu ý: only after..., only when..., only if..., not until / till..., có hình thức đảo ngữ ở mệnh đề chính.

Ví du: Only when I called her did I learn that she was seriously ill.  
(Chỉ khi gọi cho cô ấy tôi mới biết là cô ấy bệnh nặng.)

Not until you finish your homework can you go out.

(Chừng nào làm xong bài tập về nhà, con mới dược đi chơi.)

2. Cụm từ so + adjective/ adverb hoặc such + be + noun được đặt ở đầu câu để nhấn mạnh.

Ví du: So sad was she that she could not say anything.

(Cô ấy buồn đến nỗi chẳng nói năng gì.)

Such was the good novel that I read it during the night.

(Quyển tiểu thuyết hay đến nồi tôi đã dọc suốt đêm.)

1. Câu điều kiện bỏ IF (với các trợ động từ were, should và had).

Ví du: Were he here, he would help US. (Nếu anh ấy ở đẫy, anh ấy sẽ giúp chúng ta.) [= If he were here, he would help US.]

1. Cụm trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn hoặc phương hướng đứng đầu câu (đảo toàn bộ động từ ra trước chủ ngữ).

Ví du: Under the tree was lying one of the biggest men I had ever

seen. (Nằm dưới gốc cày là một trong những người dàn ông to nhất mà tôi từng gặp.)

Out into the Street ran the thieves. (Nhừng tên trộm chạy ra dường.)

1. Here, there, first, last đứng đầu câu (đảo toàn bộ động từ ra trước chủ ngừ). Ví du: There comes the bus. (Xe buýt đến rồi.)

Last went the tiger tamer. (Đi sau cũng là người huấn luyện cọp.)

1. So, neither, nor đứng đầu câu.

Ví du: I am a student. -So am I. (Tôi là sinh viên. ~Tôi củng vậy.)

I don’t like coffee. ~Nor/ Neither do I. (Tôi không thích cà phê. ~ Tôi cũng không.)

MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Choose a, b, c, or d that best completes the sentence.**

1. Never in her life this exhilarating emotion.

a. she experienced b. she did experience

c. she had experienced d. had she experienced

1. seen such awful behavior.

a. Have I never before b. Before have I never

c. Never before I have d. Never before have I\*

1. They were wealthy. Money was plentiful, and to be very bothered

about levels of expenditure,

1. rarely anyone seemed c. did anyone rarely seem
2. Not only do I enjoy classical music,
3. but I also have b. but also have
4. so upset!

a. Has the boss seldom been c. Seldom has the boss been

1. the situation.

a. Little he understands

c. Little did he understand

1. There .

a. comes my bus b. does my bus come

1. his terrible secret.

a. Did they learn only later c. Only later they learnt

1. rarely did anyone seem d. rarely anyone did seem

a season ticket to the symphony.

1. but also I have d. I but also have
2. Seldom the boss has been
3. Has the boss been seldom
4. Little he understood

d. Did he understand little

1. my bus come d. did my bus come

b. Only later they did learn

1. Only later did they learn

MODULE 22 137

9. - I’m from Turkey.

a. Am I, too b. I am, so 10. I cannot swim very well

c. So am I

d. Either am I

a. and neither my sister can c. and so my sister can

11. So difficult that

a

b. and neither can my sister d. and so can my sister \_ three months to prepare.

is the test / do the students need b. the test is / do the students need c. is the test / the students need d. the test is / the students need

12. the problem, he wouldn’t have committed those mistakes.

a. Had he understood c. If had he understood

1. a more beautiful sight.

a. Nowhere hadn’t Susan seen c. Nowhere Susan had seen

1. By the gate .

a. a little girl stood

c. did a little girl stand

1. Not until the next morning

a. she realized / was it

c. did she realize / was it

1. Not till

b. He had understood d. Unless had he understood

b. Had Susan seen nowhere d. Nowhere had Susan seen

b. stood a little girl d. a little girl did stand how serious .

b. she realized / it was d. did she realize / it was that he had lost the key. a. he got home did he find b. he got home he found

c. did he get home did he find d. did he get home he found

17. Only when

into smart clothes after the match

to talk to

the TV reporters

1. the players had changed / they were allowed
2. the players had changed / were they allowed
3. had the players changed / were they allowed
4. had the players changed / they were allowed

18. No sooner

the door than

it was locked.

a. had I reached / did I realize c. had I reached / I realized 19. , he can never follow me.

b. I had reached / did I realize d. I had reached / I realized

b. Fast as does he run d. As does he run fast

20.

21.

a. Fast as he runs c. As he runs fast

John that she talked about him all the time.

a. Did so much she adore b. Did she adored so much

c. So much she adored . d. So much did she adore

kinder to his employees, his business would not have collapsed.

b. Had if Mr. Chan been

a. Mr. Chan had been c. Had Mr. Chan been 22. Scarcely out of bed when

d. If had Mr. Chan been

a. had I got / did the doorbell ring c. I had got / did the doorbell ring

b. had I got / the doorbell rang d. I had got / the doorbell rang

how much trouble

1. Little

a. you know / are you

c. do you know / are you

1. On the table .

in.

b. you know / you are d. do you know / you are

a. lay a yellow cat b. a yellow cat lay c. did a yellow cat lie d. a yellow cat lies

25. Such

that .

whenever it was on.

1. the popularity of the film was / the streets were deserted
2. was the popularity of the film / the streets were deserted
3. the popularity of the film was / were the streets deserted
4. was the popularity of the film / were the streets deserted
5. They can neither read nor write, a. they can nor comprehend

c. nor they can comprehend

1. Hardly before .

such concepts.

b. nor can they comprehend d. can they nor comprehend

had I left / the trouble started I had left / did the trouble start

a. had I left / did the trouble start b.

c. I had left / the trouble started d.

1. Only after .
2. the teacher understood the situation and did he make a comment
3. understanding the situation the teacher made a comment
4. the teacher understood the situation and made a comment
5. understanding the situation did the teacher make a comment
6. to win the election, what first?

b. You were / would you do d. Were you / would you do

b. half a dozen apples fell d. half a dozen apples fall in.

b. I saw / which we were d. I saw / which were we

a. You were / you would do c. Were you / you would do

1. Down .

a. fell half a dozen apples c. did half a dozen apples fall

1. Only then the danger

a. did I see / which we were c. did I see / which were we

1. Not a single word .

a. said she b. she says

1. Carefully though . a. he drove
2. Not until 1911 .
3. identified the first of the vitamins
4. the first of the vitamins identified
5. was the first of the vitamins identified
6. the first of the vitamins was identified
7. Only after the film started that it before.

a. I realized / I had seen b. did I realize /1 had seen

c. I realized / had I seen d. did I realize / had I seen

1. will we let you live independently.

a. Not until do you grow up b. Until you grow up

c. did she say d. she said

, he could not manage to escape the accident.

b. did he drive c. does he drive d. he is driving

c. Until do you grow up

d. Not until you grow up

MODULE 22

**139**

a. they had got / did they begin b. they had got / they began

c. had they got / did they begin d. had they got / they began

1. I had to show him my identity card and .

a. only then he let me in b. only then did he let me in

c. did he let me in only then d. did only then he let me in

1. No matter how , he cannot make ends meet.

a. he works hard b. does he work hard

c. hard he works d. hard does he work

1. the clothes since her husband bought a washing machine.

a. Any longer she has washed b. Any longer has she washed

c. No longer she has washed d. Nojonger has she washed

1. us to have private talks in class.

a. At no time does our teacher allow c. At any time does our teacher allow 42. She is beautiful, .

a. as her daughter is c. neither is her daughter

b. At no time our teacher allows d. At any time our teacher allows

b. as is her daughter d. neither her daughter is

43.

what surprises we have in store for her.

a. Little she knows c. Little does she know

1. this match.

a. No way will you win c. Any way will you win

1. Whatever reasons

46.

a. do you state / I never believe c. you state / I never believe not for his deafness,

a. Were it / could he communicate c. It were / could he communicate

b. Does she little know d. Does she know little

b. No way you will win d. Any way you will win . them.

b. do you state / never do I believe d. you state / never do I believe on the phone.

b. Were it / he could communicate d. It were / he could communicate

47. .

me a shelter

dinner for us.

48.

1. Not only they gave / but did they also prepare
2. Not only they gave / but they also prepared
3. Not only did they give / but also prepared
4. Not only did they give / but they also prepared such a more comfortable hotel.

b. Nowhere in the area you can find

a. Nowhere in the area can you find c. Anywhere in the area can you fjnd

1. Down and up .

a. the rain came / went the umbrellas c. the rain came / the umbrellas went

1. us an apology.

a. Not once the manager offered c. Did the manager not once offer

d. Anywhere in the area you can find

b. came the rain / the umbrellas went d. came the rain / went the umbrellas

b. Not once did the manager offer d. Didn’t once the manager offer

PRACTICE TEST 1

up.

2.

3.

6.

7.

8.

9.

10.

Need

\_ his verse.

d. on

d

.

1. .

PRACTICE TEST 141

19. They could not find Peter because they knew street the number of his house.

the name of the

a. neither / nor c. not only / but also

20. He could not help,

a. and b. but

21..

had he left the room

22**.**

a. No longer / than

c. No sooner / and

the message I gave you?

1. either / or

d. hardly / than thought of his beloved wife.

1. so d. however

an explosion was heard.

b. Not only / but also

d. Hardly / when

b. To whom did you pass d. To whom you passed

a. To who did you pass c. To who you passed

1. Peter has already come, ?

a. doesn’t he b. hasn’t he c. does he d. has he

1. do you meet each other? - Once or twice a month.

a. How far b. How long c. How often d. How much

1. A high percentage of the population for Mr. Pike.

a. were voting b. have voted c. is voting d. vote

1. Either the director or the actors at fault.

a. is b. are c. has been d. that is

1. Each of the students responsible for doing his or her work in the library.

a. is b. are c. seem to be d. have been

1. Someone broke when we were on holiday last week.

a. the window of the room c. the window’s room

b. the window room

d. the window of the room’s

1. Your writing was not so convincing as

a. Peter b. of Peter’s c. Peter’s

d. Peter was

1. Presidential elections are due to be held in .

a. three days time b. three days’ time

c. time of three days d. three days’s time

1. The man is the new manager.

a. wears a traditional suit c. that wearing a traditional suit

b. wearing a traditional suit d. worn a traditional suit

b. When to be in Japan d. Was in Japan

before he can graduate, d. did

1. , we ate a lot of sashimi.

a. When in Japan c. When was in Japan

1. He seems to forget that there are a lot of things

a. to do b. doing c. that doing

1. What was music you wếre playing when we came in?

a. a b. an c. the d. 0

1. It is best restaurant in Lyon, but it is too expensive to

eat there very often.

a. the / a b. a / an c. 0 / the d. the / 0

1. I like weather in Florida in March.

a. 0 / 0 b. the /0 c. a / the d. the / a

1. I think Jane deserved to be fired for her .

a. totally behavior irresponsible b. behavior totally irresponsible c. irresponsible totally behavior d. totally irresponsible behavior

1. appeared to be coming from the science lab next door.
2. The unpleasant odor of burning plastic
3. The odor unpleasant of burning plastic
4. The unpleasant odor of plastic burning
5. The odor unpleasant of plastic burning
6. Some roses were planted .

a in the garden yesterday by Tommy b. yesterday in the garden by Tommy c. by Tommy yesterday in the garden d. in the garden by Tommy yesterday

1. The books that are on the desk are .

a. my b. mine c. me d. myself

1. I like trousers. are very fashionable.

a. your / They b. yours / Their c. you / Theirs d. you / Them

1. John invited David and Gill and two of friends.

a. they b. them c. their d. theirs

1. The beginning of the Symbolist movement in art having begun

in the late 1880’s.

a. is regarded as b. is regarded c. is regarding d. regarded as

1. The vague and misleading instructions in two entirely opposite ways.

a. could easily been interpreted b. could be easily interpret

c. could easily be interpreted d. could easily interpreted

1. Successful applicants attracting salary, bonus and benefits.

a. will pay b. will be paid c. will be paying d. are paying

46.

to explain the lesson

the classroom.

47.

48.

1. Hardly the teacher had started / when did the principal enter
2. Had hardly the teacher started / the principal entered
3. Hardly had the teacher started / when the principal entered
4. The teacher hardly had started / when entered the principal

. most of us got poor results, a. So difficult was the test that c. So difficult the test was that such a talented singer.

a. Have we enjoyed seldom c. Seldom have we enjoyed

1. Mary said that she had been ill

a. yesterday b. last day

1. Anne asked the shopping.

a. if she had to do

c. if she must do

1. Justin asked me .

a. what I was doing

c. what are you doing

b. Was difficult so the test that d. So difficult was the test

b. Seldom we have enjoyed d. Have we seldom enjoyed

1. the day before d. the next day

b. that she had to do

1. whether she must do

b. what was I doing d. what you are doing

PRACTICE TEST

**143**

1. knows no geographic borders, no age limits, and no ethnical boundaries.
2. Poor b. The poor c. Poverty d. Poorly
3. The contestant hit the target with great
4. accurate b. accurately c. accuracy

d. accuration

1. He is very in plants and animals.

a. interest b. interested

1. interesting d. interestingly

b. why was he was absent

1. where was he absent
2. The teacher did not know

a. why he was absent c. where he was absent

1. Can you please tell me ?

b. what time arrives the next bus d. when does the bus arrive

a. what time the next bus arrives c. when arrives the next bus

1. is a mystery. I wish that I could ask him.

a. How did it b. What he did it c. How he did it d. When did it

1. I was too tired to continue my work.
2. Though I was tired, I would try to continue my work.
3. I was so tired that I could not continue my work.
4. My work was continued despite my tiredness.
5. I was tired enough to continue my work.
6. “I will do it for you, Mary”, Peter said.

a. Peter advised Mary to do it. b. Peter advised Mary not to do it.

c. Peter promised to do it for Mary. d. Peter wanted Mary to do it.

1. This course will take US six months to complete.
2. In six months’ time, this course will be completed.
3. We will take a course in six months.
4. To complete this course will last over six months.
5. Six months is not enough to complete this course.
6. The victims injured in the disaster are recovering in hospital.

a. were b. which were c. who were d. whose were

1. A guide is a person tourists around a place.

a. shows

b. who shows c. whom shows d. which is showing

1. Love is a feeling .

a. difficult to describe

b. which is difficult to describe d. is difficult to describe

b. when I arrived d. since I arrived

1. up to the time the boss will need it d. by the time the boss needs it

it started to rain.

1. Till d. As long as

b. what you like

1. how you like

c. whom is difficult to describe

1. Ann was waiting for me .

a. so I arrived

c. after I had arrived

1. Jake will have finished the report \_ a. for the boss needs it

c. before the boss will need it

1. we were having the picnic,

a. While b. After

1. We can go .

a. wherever you like c. you like wherever

1. Today is it was yesterday.
2. hotter than b. as hot than c. more hot than d. many hotter than
3. The results are not we have ever expected.
4. as better as b. more better than c. better as d. as good as
5. Earning money has always been the thing that pleases him most.

he becomes, he is.

a. The more rich / the more happy b. The richest / the happiest

c. The richer / the happier d. Richer and richer / Happier and happier

1. The climber was seventy miles in the wrong direction and got .

a. more panicked b. the more panicked

c. more than panicked d. more and more panicked

1. I had learned harder when I was at university.

a. If b. Provided c. Unless d. If only

b. Provided c. Unless

he gets here soon, we will have to start the meeting without him.

73.

a. Unless b. If only c. Even if d. If

1. at home, I would enjoy my favorite show.

a. Suppose I am b. Unless were I c. Were I d. If were I

1. , they would not have sold their house.
2. If they had had financial difficulty
3. But for their financial difficulty
4. Unless their financial difficulty
5. Providing that they did not have financial difficulty
6. , she stopped to help the blind woman.

a. As in a hurry b. Even though she hurried

c. Despite of her hurry d. In spite hurrying

1. she was afraid of going out alone at night, she decided she had to

find out where he had gone, a. Despite the fact that c. In spite of

1. They had a lovely holiday
2. as would you like to be treated d. as though being treated

a. though it rained everyday c. as though the rain

1. You should behave toward others

a. as you would like to be treated

c. as being treated

1. Jack smiled a private joke.

b. Despite

d. In spite the fact that

\*

b. even though the rain d. in spite it rained everyday

a. as though enjoying

b. as he is enjoying d. as though he had been enjoying the train would be late.

b. though c. as though d. although

1. as if he would be enjoying 81. It looks

interesting novel that I stayed up all night to finish it.

a. as

82. It was

a. such an b. a such c. so an d. so

83. Mary has her phone rings constantly.

a. so many friends that b. so much friends that

c. such many friends that d. many so friends that

PRACTICE TEST 145

1. Carol wrote her essay carefully she did not make any mistakes.
2. such / that b. very / enough

c. not only / but also d. so / that

1. Dr Chan adjusted the overhead projector the students would be

able to see the chart more clearly.

a. such that b. so as to c. in order to d. in order that

1. Sarah went to the computer lab out her research report.

a. so that could print b. in order printing

c. as to print d. to print

1. The lecturer finished his lecture five minutes early the students

could come\* and ask him questions.

a. so that b. such that c. such as d. in order as

1. They did not tell her the truth they did not want to sadden her.

a. because b. because of c. due to d. thanks to

1. He could not understand he did not learn French very well.

a. for b. since c. due to d. because of

1. Because , they decided to study astronomy.
2. of the fact that their interest in comets
3. for their interest in comets
4. of their interest in comets
5. their interest in comets

Error Identification

1. The number of people living in poverty have grown to 1.2 million people.

A B

That is about one in every five people.

c D

1. Every second, a hectare of the world rainforest is destroyed. That is equivalent

A B

to two football fields.

c D

1. Recycling helps reducing greenhouse gas emissions that affect global climate.

A B CD

1. The Games\* organizers faced significant bed shortages because the record

A B c

number of more than 13,000 athletes and officials who attended the 2006 Games.

D

1. The big grow in the population is affecting the developmental activities

A B c

and demand for foodstuffs.

D

1. As the highest mountain on Earth, the Mount Everest represents the ultimate

A B c

challenge for mountain climbers.

D

ỊR )

1. Coal has provided the majority of our electricity and was a principal source

A B c

of energy since the Industrial Revolution.

D

1. The symptoms of diabetes in the early stages are too slight that people do not

A B c D

notice them.

1. Because human eyes are not very good for determining speeds of approaching

A B

objects, radar can show a pilot how fast nearly planes are moving.

c D

1. Not only knowledge and skills or attitudes need to be cultivated for students’

A B c

future adjustment to society.

D

PRACTICE TEST 2

**Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.**

1. You on the bus since 10 a.m. It now 10:40 a.m. and you

to your destination.

1. are sitting / will be / have travelled
2. will have sat / has been / will travel
3. have been sitting / is / are still travelling
4. had been sitting / was / was still travelling
5. I him these details, so he some research on his own.

a. will not tell / would have done b. have not told / would do

c. do not tell / could not have done d. did not tell / must have done

1. She on the phone with her mother for 40 minutes, and she to stop.

a. is speaking / will not seem b. will be speaking / is not seeming

c. has been speaking / does not seem d. has spoken / did not seem

1. The doctor said John keep on playing football.

a. can b. could c. will d. shall

1. I am afraid that I remember his name, but Jane know.

a. cannot / may b. would not / will c. needn’t / mustn’t d. ought not to/would

1. In the end it did not rain, so I my raincoat.

a. shouldn’t bring b. might be bringing

c. needn’t bring d. needn’t have brought

1. Most people know that smoking is harmful their health but they are

addicted the practice.

a. of / for b. to / to c. on / upon d. at / of

1. Tom apologized breaking Tina’s valuable pot. He said that he did

not do it purpose.

a. for / on b. against / off c. about / through d. on / from

1. the end next month, we will have completed our course.

a. Through / via b. On / for c. After / from d. By / of

PRACTICE TEST 147

They invited me a. speak

I saw the customer

at the conference.

b. to speak c. speaking

in the hall. He asked

d. spoken the manager.

11.

12.

13.

14.

15.

16.

17.

18.

19.

1. **21**. 22.

23.

24.

25.

26.

**27.**

1. 29.

a. wait / seeing b. to wait / for seen We never forget

c. waited / see d. waiting / to see the President at the graduation ceremony when

we were at university.

a. to meet b. meet c. meeting d. met

does not like learning history.

a. A great deal of students b. Many a student

c. Many students d. Every students

She has business contacts in Las Vegas.

a. a large amount of b. much of c. the number of d. a number of

must come to class on time.

a. Most of students b. All student c. Every students d. Each student

Barriers were built to the flood water.

c. keep back

d. give up the grass”

a. go through b. put away When we visit a park we may see a notice saying

d. Keep off

a. Get on b. Take in

I cannot wait until they

a. send through b. pick up

c. Go up the new model, c. give away

d. bring out

you do well on your exams.

We will give you a bicycle a. only if b. until

c. because d. though

you have lots of time to do your homework, I have very little time indeed.

a. Since b. Whereas c. Unless d. If

The judge dismissed the case there was not enough evidence.

a. so b. so that c. when d. because

up at the airport? - John did.

a. Whom picked you b. Whose did you pick

c. Who picked you d. Who did you pick

up early? - To do morning exercise.

a. Why did John get b. How did John get

c. Why John got d. How John got

Let’s go somewhere for lunch, ?

a. do you b. shall we c. mustn’t you d. won’t us

Everyone in the committee to express his/her ideas.

a. allows b. allow c. are allowed d. is allowed

It was the speaker, not his ideas, that the students to riot.

a. has provoked b. provoke c. are provoking d. were provoking

The students and instructor 1 for a new facility by next year, a. are hoping b. hope c. hopes d. were hoping

I am going to the to buy some medicine.

a. chemists’s b. chemists c. chemist d. chemist’s

When Jenny was a child, reading was her hobby.

a. picture books b. picture of books c. books of pictures d. books’ pictures

1. The project may be finished in .
2. two year’s time b. two years time c. two years’ time d. two-years time
3. We were unable to carry out the experiment .
4. on account of a malfunction in the computer
5. being a malfunction in the computer
6. as the computer malfunction
7. there was a computer malfunction
8. It is colder and wetter .
9. as in the north of Germany b. in the north of Germany

c. it is in North Germany d. of North Germany

1. , they agreed to all our demands.

a. My great surprise b. To my great surprise

c. Surprising d. It was surprise

1. Austria is a member of European Union.

a. 0 / the b. an / an c. an / the d. the / an

1. In my spare time, I play guitar and collect stamps.

a. the / the b. the / 0 c. 0/0 d. 0 / the

United Kingdom, d. 0 / the

English. Hẹ comes from

36. John is

0/0

a. the / an b. an / an

1. We will not spend .

a. at home next year our holiday c. next year our holiday at home

1. Old John sometimes goes out with a. a dirty old cotton tie

c. an old dirty cotton tie

1. our next year holiday at home d. our holiday at home next year
2. a cotton dirty old tie d. an old cotton dirty tie
3. One of Jane’s favorite subjects in school is drama because lots of fun

and enjoys being part of it all.

a. has really she b. she really has c. really she has d. has she really

1. I think John is not strong enough to do the work by .

a. he b. him c. his d. himself

1. Their house has own swimming pool.

a. their \* b. its c. hers d. his

1. I prefer the second option. \_

advantages are simplicity and cheapness, c. Ite d. Itself

a. It b. Its

1. German in Austria.

a. speaks b. is spoken c. is speaking d. has spoken

1. Much of dangerous smoke goes into the air and by the clouds for great distances.

a. carries b. carrying c. carried d. is carried

1. The red button in case of emergency.

a. should not push b. should not pushed

1. should not be pushing d. should not be pushed
2. , he would have some good ideas.

a. Unless were Peter here b. If here were Peter

1. If were Peter here d. Were Peter here

PRACTICE TEST 149

1. the priest started the ceremony.
2. Had the couple no sooner arrived than
3. No sooner had the couple arrived than
4. No sooner the couple had arrived than
5. Had the couple arrived no sooner than
6. here.
7. At no time is parking allowed b. At no time is parking not allowed

c. At no time parking is allowed d. Is parking allowed at any time

1. The teacher told his student to school late.
2. does not go b. did not go c. not go d. not to go
3. He asked me .

a. where were you born b. where I was born

c. where I had been born d. where had I born

1. John said that he for that company for ten years.

a. was working b. has worked c. has been working d. had been working

1. Robots are growing in and their use in is becoming more widespread.

a. complexity / industry b. complex / industrial

c. complexly / industrialize d. complex / industrially

1. Her in hearing resulted from a childhood .

a. difficult / ill b. difficulty / illness c. difficultly / ill d. difficultly / ill

1. We could not continue due to our .

- a. tired b. tired c. tiring d. tiredness

1. The company will comply with .
2. whatever the board of directors decides
3. whatever does the board of directors decide
4. the board of directors decides whatever
5. however the board of directors decides
6. I think .

a. that Dr. Pike is a good instructor b. is that Dr. Pike a good instructor

c. if that Dr. Pike is a good instructor d. whether is Dr. Pike a good instructor

1. Ill bet you can’t guess ?
2. that what is my occupation b. how is my occupation

' c. what my occupation is d. what is my occupation

1. There will be someone meeting you on arrival.

, a. When you arrive, someone will meet you.

1. Arriving, someone will meet you.
2. You will not be met when arriving.
3. No one will meet you as you arrive
4. The last time I saw him was in 2001. a. Since 2001, I have often seen him. b. I did not see him in 2001. c. In 2001, I saw him many times, d. I haven’t seen him since 2001.
5. We are studying Unit 3 in this book.
6. We have completed two units in this book so far.
7. Three units in this book have been studied up to now.



1. We have already studied three units in this book.
2. Unit 3 in this book has been completed.
3. We invited the boy Tom had met the week before to the party.
4. whom b. whose c. why d. where
5. The world’s first satellite was called was about the size of a basket ball.
6. Sputnik I, which b. Sputnik I, that

c. Sputnik I which d. sputnik I, whose they shot the film ‘Vanilla Sky’.

c. in that d. where

I was cooking the bacon.

c. as long as d. until

1. That is the building

a. which b. that

1. Agatha was making coffee

a. while b. as soon as

1. , I have been lonely.

a. Since my grandfather dies c. Since my grandfather died

b. Whenever my grandfather died d. Whenever my grandfather dies

1. We will wait .

a. when finishing his homework b. before he finishes his homework c. no sooner he finishes his homework d. until he finishes his homework

1. I always seem to bump into him.
2. I go where d. Whatever I go

a. I go b. Wherever I go

1. The faster we finish, .

a. the sooner we can leave

c. the sooner can we leave

1. This is car in the garage.

a. so expensive

c. as expensive as

1. live in Shanghai
2. we can leave sooner and sooner
3. we can leave the sooner
4. more expensive than d. the least expensive in any other city in China, b. More people / than d. Less people / as

a. Many people / than c. As much people / as

71. The summer is coming. It gets

a. hot and hot b. the more hot If he

72

d. hotter and hotter he offered

c. the hotter well on the training courses last year,

the promotion now.

a. did / were b. did / would be

1. had done / would have been d. had done / would be
2. I would take the opportunity to talk to the boss today.

a. I were you b. If I were you c. If I had been you d. Had I been you

1. You will fail you study harder.

a. if b. unless c. provided d. supposed

1. We’ll go to Kelly’s to celebrate .

a. if you win

b. if you will win d. providing you would win \_, we got up early and started the trip, a. Tired as we were b. Despite we were tired

c. Even though were we tired d. In spite we were tired

77. They went swimming the coldness of the water.

a. Even if b. As though c. In spite of d. Despite of

PRACTICE TEST 151

1. supposed you won
2. \_
3. They managed to work together .
4. In spite their differences of opinion
5. Although they have different opinion
6. Despite the fact their differences of opinion
7. Even if their differences of opinion
8. He speaks about the subject an expert.

a. as he were b. as if he were c. if he were d. as if were he

1. It looks we would not be able to leave until the next day.

a. as though b. even though c. as d. if as

1. Do the homework the teacher said.

a. as like b. as though c. as d. as if

1. There was we were unable to find our way.

a. such many smog that b. so much smog that

c. so much smog than d. such many smog as

1. My hometown has changed I hardly recognize some places.

a. rapidly such that b. rapidly so that

c. such rapidly that d. so rapidly that

1. He was he was often willing to share all of what he had got.

a. such a generous man as b. such a generous man that

c. so a generous man that d. a so generous man that

1. Leave the keys out I remember to take them with me.

a. because b. so that c. in order to d. so as to

1. I was beginning to feel alarm, but kept it to myself our two friends.

a. so as not to worry b. so that did not worry

c. so as to I did not worry d. not in order to worry

1. I always keep fruit in the fridge insects off it.

a. order to keep b. as to keep c. so as to keep d. so as to keeping

1. he always did well on his English tests, his parents were not

surprised at his good results.

a. Since b. For c. Because of d. Due to

1. We will be staying for an extra week, we have not yet finished.

a. because b. as c. for d. due to

1. the students had successfully completed their exams, their parents

rewarded their efforts by giving them a trip to Paris.

a. Due to the fact that b. Thanks to

c. Because of d. Due to

**Error Identification**

1. If your friend tells you something in confident, do not tell anyone else about it.

A B c D

1. Scientists have said that global production of oil is set to peak in the next four year.

A B c D

1. The world’s demand has grown faster in the past five years as in the second

A B c D

half of the 1990s.

1. Like all industrial processes, nuclear power generation has by-product wastes, so as

A B c D

used fuels, radioactive waste, and heat.

1. The United States is a highly developed and industrializing society.

A B CD

1. We use lot of energy - in our homes, in businesses, in industry, and for

A B

traveling between different places.

c D

1. Ancient people burned wood to keep them warm and cooking their food.

A B CD

1. In any parts of the world, wood is still the main source of energy.

A B c D

1. The Mayan Indians lived in Mexico for thousand of years before the Spanish

A B c

arrived in the 1500s.

D

1. Teachers at the schools work hardly for at least twelve years to train their

A B c

students to become good readers.

D

PRACTICE TEST 3

**Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.**

1. Sulphur dioxide is a that is released into the atmosphere by coal-

fired power stations.

a. pollute b. pollutant c. pollution d. polluted

1. Without our , they would not have got accomplishment.

a. contribute b. contribution c. contributors d. contributive

1. By , we often go to pagoda on New Year’s Day.

a. tradition b. traditional c. traditionally d. traditionalist

1. Nowadays people become aware secondhand smoke.

a. of b. for c. up d. on

1. The search alternative sources energy has led in various directions.

a. on / with b. at / through c. for / of d. in / off

1. At the time being, many products are nearly identical one another

quality and price.

a. upon / at b. with / of c. to / in d. for / off

1. There is nothing wrong with the photocopier. It just needs .

a. to service b. service c. servicing d. serviced

1. I will make a note in my diary so that I will remember you the

information you need.

a. send b. to send c. sent d. sending

1. Curtis delayed the airplane because the weather was bad.

a. catch b. to catch c. caught d. catching

PRACTICE TEST 158

1. I no difficulty in learning Russian since I to learn it 3 years ago.
2. have had / began b. had had / begin

c. had / has begun d. am having / begin

1. Someone the cake before I .

a. was taking / was doing b. will have taken / will do

c. has been taking / am doing d. had taken / did

1. The apples all summer and now they . They look delicious.
2. had grown / were ready to pick
3. have been growing / are ready to be picked
4. are growing / have been ready to be picked
5. will be growing / are ready to pick
6. I want a new house. It have a swimming pool, but it have

a nice garden.

a. needn’t / must b. should not / could c. may not / shall d. cannot / ought to

1. The lady you met yesterday Mary. I am sure that she has gone to

London for two weeks.

a. can’t be b. cannot have been c. should not be d. will not have been

1. Take your time. You back before eight.

a should have been b. needn’t be c. could have been d. may have been

1. She keeps in the refrigerator.

a. all orange b. all oranges c. any oranges d. most orange

1. We keep in the cupboard.

a. rices b. the rice c. the rices d. many rice

1. While the problem seems overwhelming, even money can make a difference.

a. a little bit of b. a few c. any d. many

1. Four years a long time to spend away from your friends and family.

a. were b. have been c. is d. are

1. Politics something too difficult for me to understand.

a. is b. are c. were d. have been

1. To an outsider, the economics of this country in disarray.

a. are not b. are c. seem to be d. seems to be

1. ! The street is wet and slippery.

a. Look out b. Pass on c. Slow up d. Hold on

1. Her little boy is so imaginative. He can stores himself.

a. help out b. do over c. think out d. make up

1. I wonder how Sam such a selfish person.

a. keep up with b. got on with c. take off d. go away from

1. We are going out to eat we finish taking the test.

a. after b. so , c. but d. and

1. I wanted to sit in the front of the balcony I ordered my tickets early.

a. before b. and c. or d. so

1. The concert was cancelled we went to a night club instead.

a. since b. in order that c. so d. as

1. is their child? - Five.

a. How often b. How old c. How long d. How far

30.

31

the bus? - At the bus stop over there.

a. Which do I catch b. Why did I catch

c. Where can I catch d. When I caught

they succeed in their project?

a. Did b. Are c. Have d. Is

He took the dictionary from .

a. the top of the book shelf b. the top of the book’s shelf

c. the book shelf of the top d. the book shelf top

1. The can be borrowed from the .

a. students books / school’s library b. students’ books / school library c. books of students / school of library d. student books / library’s school

1. , the national holiday of Ireland, is generally celebrated on March 17.

a. Day Saint Patrick b. Day Saint Patrick’s

c. Saint Patrick Day d. Saint Patrick’s Day

1. Mrs. Pike, , is nice and helpful.

a. our vice-principal b. she is our vice-principal

c. to be a vice-principal d. works as a vice-principal

1. She has five days off work .

a. illness b. but for illness c. with her illness d. due to her illness

1. I was the last that the meeting had been cancelled.

a. informing b. to be informed c. as informed d. was informed

1. He has worked as MC for three months.

c. the

a. a b. an

1. Can you imagine how human life will be in \_

a. a b. an c. the

1. Pacific is largest ocean in

d. 0 future?

d. 0 world.

d. 0 / the / the

a. The / the / the b. An / the / 0

1. to the cinema?

a. Do you frequently go c. You frequently do go

1. I am going .

a. Monday to see him on b. on Monday to see him

c. to see him on Monday d. Monday to see on him

1. The teacher his student’s behavior.

a. was angry quite with b. was quite angry with

c. quite was angry with d. was angry with quite

1. She was so sad that most nights she would cry to sleep.

a. she b. her c. hers

c. The / an / the

b. Do you go frequently d. Frequently do you go

1. I have known the Browns for a long time.

a. They are b. He is c. You are

1. - Whose bag is this? - It’s .

a. I b. me c. mine

1. Where ?

d. herself

very pleasant people, d. We are

d. myself

was the books found were the books found

b. the books have been found d. have the books found

PRACTICE TEST

**155**

47. The damage worth more than 2 million pounds.

b. reported to be d. is reporting to be

that she was allergic to cats.

1. was reported to be c. reported was
2. The bread .
3. was cut with a big knife c. cut with a big knife
4. mowing the lawn
5. No sooner had I started / but

c. No sooner had I started / than

1. There .
2. comes the boss c. does the boss come

51.

1. Never she has said
2. Has she never said
3. Frank wanted to know
4. was cut by a big knife d. is cutting with a big knife it started raining,
5. No sooner I had started / than d. Had I started no sooner / and
6. the boss comes d. did the boss come
7. Has she said never
8. Never has she said
9. promised US to help

b. how much money Lisa could earn d. how much money Lisa can earn

a. how much money could Lisa earn c. how much money can Lisa earn

1. The boss because he was too lazy.

a. threatened to dismiss him b. threatened him to dismiss

c. suggested him to dismiss d. promised him to dismiss

1. The villagers them to repair roads and plant trees.

**b. apologized US for helping d. thanked US for helping**

b. He came here d. That he came here

**b. study hard for this exam**

**d. that whether we study hard for this exam**

1. ordered US for helping
2. very surprising.

à. He came here was

1. That he came here was
2. It is important .

a. that we study hard for this exam

1. studying hard for this exam
2. At last she realized .

a. he was deceiving her c. if was he deceiving her

b. was he deceiving her d. when was he deceiving her

1. Peter does not work for our company any more.
2. Peter gets used to working for our company.
3. Peter used to work for our company.
4. Peter are used to working for our company
5. Peter did not use to work for our company
6. You should have seen the boss as soon as you arrived.
7. The boss did not want to see you when you arrived.
8. You were supposed to see boss when you arrived.
9. After your arrival, you came to see the boss.
10. You came to see the boss as soon as you arrived.
11. I’d prefer it if you didn’t smoke in here, a. Smoking is banned in here.

156 V'

1. People prefer to smoke in here.
2. Both you and I prefer smoking in here.
3. Would you mind not smoking in here?
4. The friends at university are coming to visit next week.

a. we met b. when we met c. whose we met d. we met whom

1. also goes to this school, will be attending the party next weekend.

a. Mr. Jackson whom son b. Mr. Jackson whose son

c. Mr. Jackson, whose son d. Mr. Jackson who son

1. It is easy to see he has succeeded.

a. the reason that b. the reason, which c. the reason, why d. the reason why

1. We need to look at this proposal very carefully .

a. after we have made a decision b. before we make a decision

c. after we are making a decision d. before we will make a decision

1. the washing up, Maria put the dishes away.

a After I had done 66. Let’s wait here \_

b. After had I done c. After I have done d. After I would do

b. by the time the rain will stop d. when the rain will stop

b. wherever the army assigns them d. as much as the army assigns them England.

b. as twice big as d. as big as twice

a. no sooner it stops raining c. until it stops raining

1. Soldiers must go .

a. for wherever the army assigns them c. in where the army assigns them

1. That state is at least

a. twice as big as c. as two times big as

1. live in the capital than in the whole of the rest of the country.

a. Many people b. More people

c. As many as people d. People more

1. The fruits of the tropics are .
2. more varied as those of temperate regions
3. as varies than the fruits of temperate regions
4. more varied than that of temperate regions
5. more varied than those of temperate regions

71.1 think New York is one of cities in the world.

a. more wonderful b. most wonderful

c. the most wonderful d. as much wonderful as

1. If it an hour ago, we would have stayed inside.

a. rains b. rained c. had rained d. were raining

1. I had brought my laptop to the meeting yesterday.

a. If b. If only

1. If you meet Mary today,

a. tell b. to tell

1. She had to have the operation a. unless she would dies

c. otherwise she will die

c. Even if  
her to ring me.  
c. telling

d. As if

d. will tell

b. if she would die d. or she would die

**PRACTICE TEST 157**

76. She arrived safely she lost her way twice.

a. although b. despite \_ c. despite of d. in spite of

77.

he seldom helps the poor.

78.

a. In spite of his wealth b. Despite of his wealth

c. In spite he is wealthy d. Despite he is wealthy

, we could not solve the problem of rubbish.

a. Despite hard we worked c. Though did we work hard

1. They talked the book

a. as they had read

c. as if they had read

1. Johnny ate greedily

a. if b. in order to

1. Leave the documents .

a. as they are

c. as if they are

1. There is

b. In spite of we worked hard d. Hard as we worked

1. if they had read

d. as if they are reading \_he had not eaten anything for days.

1. even if d. as if

b. as though they are d. like they are

the environment is more and more polluted.

1. so much carbon dioxide in the air that
2. so many carbon dioxide in the air that
3. so much carbon dioxide in the air as
4. such carbon dioxide in the air as

83. She has gained she cannot get into her trousers.

a. such a lot of weight that b. so a lot of weight that

c. such many weight that d. so weight that

The chemicals were they caused serious damage to the environment.

84.

a. poisonous so that c. so poisonous that

1. He kept quiet

a. so'that to avoid trouble c. in order he could avoid trouble 86. She took a computer course .

b. poisonous such that d. such poisonous that

b. so as to avoiding trouble d. in order to avoid trouble

*87,*

1. so as to she had get a better job
2. so as that she could get a better job
3. in order that she had ever got a better job
4. so that she could get a better job

They caught a taxi they could arrive at the conference on time.

a. so that b. so as to c. in order to d. in case that

1. The judge dismissed the case :
2. because of the evidence was not enough evidence
3. because not enough evidence
4. because of there was not enough evidence
5. because there was not enough evidence
6. I enjoy the course the professor is very good.

a. thanks to b. due to c. because of d. since

1. Humans suffer a lot of from natural disasters because ,
2. of the fact that their serious destruction of the environment
3. their serious destruction of the environment
4. of they have seriously destroyed the environment
5. they have seriously destroyed the environment

**Error Identification**

1. Some people are concerned that burning garbage may make harm to the

A B CD

environment.

1. Energy conservation is any behavior it results in the use of less energy.

A B c D

1. According to the Canadian Pulp and Paper Association, Canada supplies

"a B

34% of the worlds wood pulp and 49% of it newsprint paper,

c D

1. The richest, 5 percent of Americans, earned approximately 10 times much as

A B CD

the poorest, 20 percent.

1. Mollusks, recognizing by most people by their shells, create some of the most

A B c

diverse and beautiful objects on Earth.

D

1. The role of women in agriculture and in rural development is increasing

A B

recognized both at international and national level, c D

1. In the early years of television, educational specialists believed that it will be

A B C D

very useful in teaching and learning.

1. Knowledge about farming and tools have made our work easier and more productive.

A B c D ,

1. The California Gold Rush was a period in American history marked by

A B

great world-wide interest concerning a gold discover in Northern California.

c D

1. We can burn garbage in special plants and use its heat energy to make

A B

steam to heat buildings or to generate electric.

c D

PRACTICE TEST 4

Choose av b, c, or d that is the best alternative.

1. Pollution is the most important problem that all environmentalists are concerned .

a. upon b. off c. about d. on

PRACTICE TEST 159

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 2. | He did not get any promotion in | | his study because of being absorbed sport. |
|  | a. at | b. through | c. on d. in |
| 3. | We needn’t always complain | | pollution but we have to find out proper |
|  | solutions | the problem. |  |
|  | a. on / from | b. about / to | c. at / over d. of / for |
| 4. | Paul stopped | a rest because he was very tired. | |
|  | a. have | b. to have | c. had d. having |
| 5. | The fall in demand forced US | | production. |
|  | a. cut | b. to cut | c. cutting d. for cutting |
| 6. | Eric appreciated | a birthday card from his mother. | |
|  | a. get | b. to get | c. getting d. got |
| 7. | She spends | money on | CDs. |
|  | a. too many of |  | b. a few of |
|  | c. many of |  | d. a rather large amount of |
| 8. | We need | for the party. | |
|  | a. three boxes of chocolate | | b. three box of chocolate |
|  | c. three boxes of chocolates | | d. three box of chocolates |
| 9. | Pour over the chicken. | |  |
|  | a. a little of the | sauce | b. a few of the sauce |
|  | c. many of the sauce | | d. little of the sauces |
| 10. | It would take him the rest of his life to that loan. | | |

d. cut down

a. drive in b. throw out

1. He played the violin, and he

a. put to b. came up

1. Nina and Mary were in the kitchen, a. cleaning up b. setting off
2. John all day before he

c. pay off \_ from all the other musicians, c. stood out d. stopped back

after dinner.

c. getting down d. going over down to eat something.

b. will have worked / has sat d. has worked / will sit

a. had been working / sat c. is working / sits

14. She a sort of breakdown some years ago, and since then she

a special treatment.

15.

b. had / has had d. had had / had

to alleviate the problems in Ethiopia,

16.

a. had / had

c. was having / has had

Although a lot of people

people of starvation there every day.

a. had worked / are dying b. will be working / had died

c. are working / will die d. have worked / are still dying

Sami lift that heavy table. He is too weak.

a. cannot b. should c. may d. might

travel with my friends but now I .

will / mustn’t c. should / shall not d. might / may not

18. You failed in your final test. You harder.

a. needn’t have studied b. may study

c. should have studied d. would study

17

If I had enough money, I. a. could / cannot b.

1. Either you can talk to him, I will.

a. or b. and c. but

1. you can see, we’re still working.

a. Providing b. As c. So as to

1. I do not know people will support it or not.

a. as b. whether c. but

1. long has Ted been living here?

a. Which b. What c. How

1. ? - It’s Peter’s.

a. Who is it b. What is this book c. What is this

1. is flight 677 supposed to arrive? - At three o’clock.

a. What time b. For what c. How often d. What color

1. The tornadoes that tear through this county every spring more

than just a nuisance.

a. is b. are c. is thought to be d. is thinking to be

1. Everyone selected to serve on this jury willing to give up a lot of time.

a. has to be b. have to be c. are d. were

1. Not only John but also I practicing English in the morning.

d. if

d. So that

d. as if

d. When

d. Whose book is this

a. are used to

1. It is only

a. a mile walk

1. This is

b. is used to \_ far from here, b. a mile’s walk

c. am used to

d. were used to

c. a walk’s mile d. a walkmiile

b. New York’s tallest building d. tallest building New York

30.

a. New York tallest building c. tallest building’s New York

has been postponed because of the heavy storm.

a. Tomorrow match b. Tomorrow of match

c. Tomorrow’s match d. Match’s tomorrow

1. She waved at her baby, \_ a. with happily smiling c. and smiling happily

32.

b. smiling happily d. to smile happily

, you have to work hard to find more encouraging methods and techniques, a. A teacher b. As a teacher c. Are a teacher d. With a teacher

1. The man T was arrested last night.

a. to live next door b. he lives next door c. living next door d. lives next door

1. Our country will have space shuttle to moon next month.

a. a / the / the b. a / the /0 c. the / 0 / the d. 0 / the / a

1. Who is first spaceman to travel into space?

a. the /0 b. the / the c. a / a d. a / the

36. I have just bought

HP printer, which is better than

one

my mother gave me.

a. 0 / the b. the / an c. an / the d. a / 0

37. Only after they had completed the analysis to that degree

apply technology to the needs of our enterprise.

a. did they ask to begin b. did they begin to ask

c. they did begin to ask d. to ask did they begin

how to

PRACTICE TEST

16**Ỉ**

1. Do you know the man sitting at the ?

a. ugly wooden office desk b. wooden office ugly desk

c. ugly office wooden desk d. office ugly wooden desk

1. The archaeologists were astonished to find such at that particular site.

a. an incredibly rare beautiful artifact b. a rare incredibly beautiful artifact c. a beautiful artifact incredibly rare d. an incredibly beautiful rare artifact

1. They kindly invited sister and to the party.

a. I / me b. my / me c. myself /I d. mine / my

a big garden, but we do all the gardening by

41

42.

a. Itself / our b. It's / ourselves c. It / we Where are my glasses? disappeared.

d. Its / us

d. I have

a. They have

b. It has c. She has

by Peter before the end of the day.

b. has been calculating d. will have been calculating

1. The cost

a. has calculated

c. will have been calculated

1. yet?

a. The building has been painted c. Has the building painted

b. Was the building been painted d. Has the building been painted

b. cannot cleaned up d. cannot cleaning up

1. The polluted rivers .

a. cannot clean up c. cannot be cleaned up

1. that she liked curry, he would have brought her to an Indian restaurant.

a. If had John known b. Had John known

c. John had known d. If had known John

1. any attentipn to his agent’s advice.

a. Did the artist pay rarely b. Rarely the artist paid

c. Rarely did the artist pay d. Did the artist rarely pay

1. responsible for customers’ lost property.

a. Can the shop in no way be held b. Can the shop in any way be held c. In no way the shop can be held d. In no way can the shop be held

1. Yesterday grandmother asked me \_ a. if where her glasses were c. if where were her glasses

b. where her glasses were d. where were her glasses

b. asked would Mandy have d. asked if would Mandy have the Volunteer Program for three times, b. said / participated d. told me / had participated

1. Andrew lunch with Sue.

a. said to me if Mandy would have c. asked me if Mandy would have

1. Susan that she

a. told / participates c. asked me / has participated

1. At last the is showing signs of

a. economical / recover c. economy / recovery

b. economics / recovery d. economic / recover . because of poisonous

1. Many women have to suffer

a. children / chemistry c. childless / chemical

b. childhood / chemist d. childlessness / chemicals

54. Admitting you have made a mistake is a sign of , not .

a. strong / weakly b. strength / weakness

c. strengthen / weak d. strongly / weakened

is unknown.

55.

56.

57.

a. They are going where c. Where are they going is important.

1. Whether is or not a computer light-weighted
2. Whether a computer is light-weighted or not
3. A computer is light-weighted
4. Whether is a computer light-weighted pay for it.

b. Are they going where d. Where they are going

a. However broke the vase will have to b. Will whoever break the vase have to c. Whoever broke the vase will have to d. Who did the vase break will have to

1. “I won’t do this work under any circumstances,” the worker said.

a. The worker promise to do that work. b. The worker advised me to do that work, c. The worker agreed to do that work. d. The worker refused to do that work.

1. What a terrific piece of music it was!

a. How terrific that piece of music was! b. The music was too bad to enjoy! c. We did not enjoy that piece of music, d. No one liked that piece of music.

1. It was such an interesting book that I read it through during the night.
2. So interesting was the book that I read it through during the night.
3. Though I read the book through during the night, I did not find it interesting.
4. It was a waste of time reading the book through during the night.
5. I found the book interesting but I could not complete it during the night.

It was a very cold winter he was born.

61

a. in that

1. The document \_ a. that I need
2. That’s the hotel a. we met
3. Close all the windows

a. before b. after

1. Please don’t smoke

b. in which c. where

has a brown cover.

b. whom I need c. I need which

for the first time.

b. when we met c. where we met  
\_ you go out.

c. while

d. in when

d. for that I need

d. which we met

d. till

a. when you will be working c. as long as the time you are working 66. We take a hike our farm.

67,

a. soon before he visits c. every time he visits He has to go .

a. whoever his job takes him c. however his job takes him

68. Life seems to be .

a. more and as difficult c. as and more difficult

b. while you are working d. by the time you are working

b. not until he visits d. till he visits

b. wherever his job takes him d. whatever his job takes him

b. more and more difficult d. as and less difficult

PRACTICE TEST

1. My husband and I aren’t age.
2. the same b. as old as c. the same as d. as
3. Modern people have education than their ancients.

a. most b. much c. more d. the more

1. What is ocean in the world?

a. largest b. the larger c. more larger d. the largest

1. If he had not stepped on the mine, .

a. otherwise it would not have exploded b. it would not have exploded

c. it will not have exploded d. or it would not explode

1. If he too much last night, he now.

a. did not drunk / will not feel ill b. was not drinking / does not feel ill

c. had not drunk / would not feel ill d. had not drunk / would not have felt ill

1. She would tell us the truth .

a. if she knows it b. if she knew it

c. unless she knows it d. unless she had known it

1. something wrong, please.

a. If there is / keep calm b. In case / to keep

c. Unless there were / you would keep calm d. Provided there was / keeping calm

1. Whaling continues in some countries .
2. even though the efforts of many organisations to stop it
3. despite the efforts of many organisations to stop it
4. in spite of the efforts of many organisations are made to stop it
5. in spite of the fact that the efforts of many organisations to stop it
6. they are often disheartened, they are now beginning to see some

positive results.

a. Even though b. As though c. Despite d. In spite of

1. natural resources are known to be limited, they are not being used economically.

a. As if b. If c. Even if d. Despite

1. She looked some bad news.

a as if she had had b. as if she has c. as she had had d. as though she has

1. They stared at me crazy.

a. if I were b. as though I am

c. as though I had been d. as I were

1. The city center is still exact it was when it was built thirty years ago.

a. like b. as c. as if d. as though

1. The contestant was she could not answer the question thoroughly.

a. so nervous that b. such nervous that c. very nervous that d. too nervous that

1. She looked at him in he had to look away.

a. such distress that ' b. so distress that

c. distress such that d. distress so that

1. no one objected to her proposal.

a. She talked such convincingly that b. Did she talk so convincingly that c. Such convincingly did she talk that d. So convincingly did she talk that

1. They closed the door no one could hear what they were talking about.

a. so that b. in order to c. so as to d. such that

1. A backpack is a bag with straps that go over your shoulders things

on your back while you are walking.

1. so you can carry that b. such that you can carry

c. so that you can carry d. so that can you carry

1. I agreed to her suggestion .

a. so as did not upset her b. so that not to upset her

c. in order to not upset her d. in order not to upset her

1. , he went to see his tutor to ask for advice.
2. Because of the fact that his problems with mathematics
3. Due to the fact that his problems with mathematics
4. Because he was having problems with mathematics
5. Because of he was having problems with mathematics
6. Mark joined the English Drama Club he wanted to improve his intonation.

a. since b. because of c. due to d. thanks to

1. He works a lot of overtime his rent is so expensive.

a. due to b. because of c. for d. because

Error Identification

1. Over the past 60 years, starting right after World War II, American society

A B

became richer.

c D

1. In many places in the world, social or religious restrictions which prevent

A B c

women from travelling freely.

D

1. It estimates that women represent more than half of the labor required to

A B

produce the food consumed in developing countries,

c D

1. The more languages we learn, the most we get into the knowledge treasure

A B c D

of humanity.

1. The trouble in communication between nations are not distance, different

A

habits and customs, or national interests, but it is the trouble of language.

B c D

9b. The United States uses many of energy - nearly a million dollars worth

A B c D

each minute.

1. If you have some sufficient knowledge of English you can make yourself

A B

understand almost everywhere, c D

1. If students can get a job in their area of study, they will gain valuable

A B c

experience and putting their knowledge to use immediately.

D

PRACTICE TEST **165**

1. Advertising not only leads US to buy things that we do not need or cannot

A B

afford and confuses our sense of reality, c D

1. Commercials on TV and ads in newspapers and magazines influence US many

A B c

more than we think they do.

D

PRACTICE TEST 5

**Choose ay by c, or d that is the best alternative.**

1. Be careful with that knife or will cut !

a. yourself / you

d. you / yourself d. in buying d. me d. should d. shall

b. yours / your c. your / yours

a new car this year.

b. buying c. buy

1. There’s no point a. to buy
2. I never get an hour to

a. I b. my

c. myself have some sleep.

1. You look tired. You

a. shall b. might c. will

1. Mary come to help US, but nobody is sure.

a. should b. might c. can

1. you like anything to drink? - No, thanks.

a. Would b. Should c. Needn’t d. Might

1. I am sorry what happened you yesterday.

a. at / for b. on / to c. about / to d. with / on

1. Peter is not accustomed speaking public.

a. to / in b. from / on c. for / at d. with / about

1. Most people think computers very modern inventions.

a. about / up b. for / on c. on / with d. of / as

1. Her new book is supposed

\_\_ very good, c. to be

in this newspaper, c. reading

a. is b. be

d. being d. for reading d. telling d. a bar of cloths d. too many of

1. There is nothing worth

a. read b. to read

1. She kept \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ herself that nothing was wrong.

a. tell b. to tell c. told

1. She began cleaning the wound with a. a piece of cloth b. a piece of cloths

c. a bar of cloth reading.

1. Our current assignment requires

a. many b. a few of c. quite a bit of

1. are marching along the streets.

a. Thousand of people b. Thousands of people

c. Thousand of peoples d. Thousands people

1. She English very well although she to England.

a. speaks / has never been b. has spoken / was never

d. will speak / had never been

c. has spoken / is never

We can go out now. It any more.

17.

18.

19.

1. **21. 22**.

23.

24.

25.

26.

27.

28.

29.

30.

31.

32.

33.

34.

35.

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| a. picking on b. taking in | c. lighting up | d. making for |
| The moon will rise the sun sets. | |  |
| a. before b. as soon as | c. until | d. for |
| he left, he made sure he had his keys with | | him. |
| a. As though b. If only | c. Before | d. Unless |
| I told the truth, you would not believe me. | |  |
| a. As b. But | c. Since | d. Even if |
| the weather like? |  |  |
| a. What is b. How does | c. Which are | d. When do |
| How much does that computer cost? | - |  |
| a. It takes three days | b. $1,000 |  |

a. did not rained b. will not rain c. has not rained d. is not raining

pregnant for 5 months next week?

a. Is she b. Has she been c. Had she been d. Will she have been

Their grandfather seemed to be bally ill, so they immediately the doctor.

a. called off b. sent for c. put through d. give up

The country’s worsening reputation does not seem to be the tourists.

a. taking down b. spending out c. speeding up d. putting off

He took his time a cigarette, and smoked leisurely.

c. Three days ago d. Twice a week

Peter caught a taxi, ?

a. doesn’t he b. did he c. didn’t he d. isn’t he

Three-quarters of the teachers against omitting university en­

trance exams.

a. is b. has been c. have been d. was

Rickets \_\_\_\_\_\_ a disease that children can get when their food does not

contain enough Vitamin D.

a. is b. are c. were d. are thought to be

Furniture of large objects such as tables, chairs, or beds.

a. consist b. consists c. were consisted d. are consisted

lived in the United States.

a. Peter and Mary grandfather b. Peter’s and Mary grandfather

c. Peter’s and Mary’s grandfather d. Peter and Mary’s grandfather

Someone is waiting for you at the .

a. front door b. front’s door c. door front d. front of door

This was built in 1937.

a. first cinema town’s b. town of first cinema

c. town’s first cinema d. town first cinema

seems to be to enjoy himself.

a. That was his only purpose in life b. With his only purpose in life

c. It was his only purpose in life d. His only purpose in life

Do you know the man ?

a. to be in a dark suit over there b. who in a dark suit over there

c. he was in a dark suit over there d. in a dark suit over there

PRACTICE TEST 167

1. new wedding beautiful dress c. wedding beautiful new dress Please fill out .

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| a. a | b. an | c. the | d. 0 |
| 38. Don't look at | sun with your | bear eyes? |  |
| a. a | b. an | c. the | d. 0 |
| 39. What is | biggest desert in | world? |  |
| a. the / 0 | b. the / an | c. 0 / the | d. the |

1. I will go to bed

a. in an hour

c. it is in an hour

1. Can you give me \_

b. when in an hour d. when it is in an hour explanation for your failure?

40. Have you seen my

1. this form with your details c. this details with your form

b. beautiful new wedding dress d. beautiful wedding new dress

b. with your details this form d. with your form this details

41

1. I have heard .
2. some interesting information about our competitors
3. about our competitors some interesting information
4. some interesting our competitors about information
5. about some interesting information our competitors
6. “Gone With The Wind” since last week.
7. is shown b. was shown c. has been shown d. will be shown
8. The vaccine in Switzerland in 1974.
9. has been developed d. had been developed

a. was developed c. is developed

1. “Hamlet”,

a. written



about the meeting, he would have participated.

by Shakespeare, is my favorite play, b. has been written c. was written d. writing

a. Had if Jake been informed b. Unless had Jake been informed

1. Had Jake been informed d. If had Jake been informed
2. his wife, the problem.
3. Only when John met / he understood
4. Only when John met / did he understand
5. Only did when John meet / he understood
6. Only when did John meet / did he understand
7. one problem another one.
8. Hardly I had solved / when did I encounter
9. Hardly I had solved / when I encountered
10. Hardly had I solved / when did I encounter
11. Hardly had I solved / when I encountered
12. Mary said .

a. she had met John the previous week b. she met John the previous week c. she had met John last week d. she met John last week

1. “ ” Daisy made a suggestion.

a. I really don’t like to go fishing. b. I think going fishing is interesting, c. How about going fishing this afternoon? d. Do you like to go fishing?

1. “If I were you, I would learn how to use a computer”, Peter .

a. advised me b. refused my proposal

c. disagreed with me d. promised to help me

1. A new manager was appointed during her .

a. absent b. absence c. absently d. absentee

1. I am really to make a in my study.

a. sure / success b. surely / succeed

c. ensure / successful d. sure / successfully

1. At last he managed to complete his work

a. confide b. confident

1. changed his life forever.

a. That Tom did b. What did Tom do

1. is important to her future.

c. confidently d. confidence

c. What Tom did d. Who Tom did

Whether does she pass or not Whether she passes or not

a. If she passes b.

c. Whether she pass or not d.

1. Do you know ?

a. who’s house that is c. whose house that is

1. “It is you that stole my purse,” Mrs.
2. Mrs. Pike told the young man that it was you that stole her purse.
3. Mrs. Pike denied the young man of stealing her purse.
4. Mrs. Pike accused the young man of stealing her purse.
5. Mrs. Pike asked the young man to steal her purse.
6. Neither John nor I join you
7. I, along with John, join you
8. Both of us, John and I, join you.
9. John, as well as I, joins you.
10. John does not join you, and I do not, either.
11. How can you stand such a talkative girl?
12. How can you get on with such a talkative girl?
13. How can you put up with such a talkative girl?
14. How can you get rid of such a talkative girl?
15. How can you keep pace with such a talkative girl?
16. the bank robbers escaped was white.

a. The car b. The car in which c. The car in that d. The car which

1. The woman son was crying tried to calm him.

a. who b. whom c. whose d. that

1. The villagers had found the men and their car were buried in the snow.

b. whose house is that

d. whose house is

Pike said to the young man.

a. who b. which

, we have fun.

c. that

d. whom

a. No sooner had we got together c. Not until we get together

b. Any time we get together d. Soon after we will get together

**PRACTICE TEST 169**

, we go out to have seafood for dinner.

65.

66**.**

67.

68.

69.

70.

71.

72.

73.

74.

75.

76.

77.

78.

79.

a. Why he comes b. What he comes

c. Whenever he comes d. Whenever does he come

her degree, she became a teacher.

a. Before had she got b. Up to she had got

c. If she had got d. After she had got

All across Europe, , marriage is in decline and divorce rates are soaring.

a. in where you look b. at the time you look

c. wherever do you look d. wherever you look

My work is getting . I cannot cope.

a. hard and hard b. harder and harder

c. hardest and hardest d. more and .more hard

we leave, we arrive.

a. The earliest / the sooner b. The more early / the more soon

c. The earlier / the sooner d. The earliest/ the soonest

I much prefer this candidate. I thought she was better than the other one.

a. more b. as c. far d. many

This clown is not the other one.

a. more funnier than b. funnier as

c. least funny than d. as funny as

If I the lottery last week, I rich now.

a. had won / would be b. had won / would have been

c. won / would be d. won / would have been

we would have got into trouble.

a. In case of your support b. Providing that you supported US

c. If you supported US d. Without your support

with my previous job, I would have won a higher promotion and I

in this unfortunate position now.

a. Unless I had stayed / am not b. If I stayed / would not be

c. If had I stayed / will not be d. Had I stayed / would not be

If they down that old opera house, we would not have any histori­

cal architecture left in the city.

a. tear b. tore c. torn d. were torn

Chinese has more speakers than English, it is not chosen as an

international language.

a. Although b. If c. Despite d. In spite of

, they were unable to save the patient.

a. Despite the doctors acted promptly b. Promptly although the doctors acted

c. Promptly as the doctors acted d. Promptly as acted the doctors

the product is safe, many people have stopped buying it.

a. Despite they assure repeatedly that b. In spite they assure repeatedly that c. Despite repeated assurances that d. In spite repeated assurances that

He got divorced, his parents had done years before.

a. as b. as though c. as if d. like

1. The old lady is shouting loudly .
2. though she were going mad b. as though she is going mad

c. as if she were going mad d. like she goes mad

1. I felt so hot in the sun for hours.

a. as I had been lying b. as if I have been lying

c. as though I am lying d. as though I had been lying

1. It was I could not help myself bursting into tears.

a. such a sad story that b. so a sad story that

c. such a sad story as d. so a sad story as

1. It was a pleasant surprise that I have never forgotten it for years.

a. so b. such c. too d. quite

1. John knew about the contest that he failed at the first stage.

a. such many b. so little

1. so d. such

marathon race next month, b. so that he can join

1. in order he can join

tortoises form being extinct.

b. so that they can protect d. so as they can protect

b. in order to get a good seat d. in order that got a good seat

b. Due to I don’t know the way d. Because of I don’t know the way

1. John practices every day a

a. so as he can join

c. so as to joining

1. The volunteers collect tortoise eggs a. such that they can protect

c. in order can protect

1. She came early .

a. so as getting a good seat c. so that got a good seat , I’ll take a taxi.

88.

a. Because not knowing the way c. As I don’t know the way

1. We were unable to carry out the experiment the computer malfunctioned.

a. due to b. because of c. because d. as for

1. Some of the students began to fall asleep .
2. due to the fact that boring and irrelevant the lecture
3. due to because the lecture was boring and irrelevant
4. because the lecture was boring and irrelevant
5. because boring and irrelevant the lecture

**Error Identification**

1. Plants and animals require water that are moderately pure, and they cannot

A B c

survive if water is loaded with toxic chemicals.

D

1. Water pollution can kill a large number of fish, birds, but other animals; in

ABC

some cases it may kill all members of a species in an affected area.

D

1. It said that mathematics is the base of all other sciences, and that arithmetic.

A B c

the science of number, is the base of mathematics.

D

PRACTICE TEST 171

1. One step beyond automated machines is the industrial robot, the heart and

A B

brain of that is the microcomputer.

c D

1. Experts in psychology believe that for many people money is an importance

**A B c**

symbol of strength and influence.

D

1. In recent years, there have been great increases in a number of engineers

A B CD

and scientists employed in American industries.

1. Although Yuri Gagarin first space flight lasted only 108 minutes, it gave

**A** B **c**

encouragement to those who were interested in the future of manned space flight. D

1. Electronic computers are wonderful proof of how clever people are at work

A B CD

out ways of helping themselves.

1. Physical fitness does not guarantee good health, but they provide a big step

**A** B **c**

toward living a long and healthy life.

D

1. Nylon, a synthetic, make from a combination of water and a by-product of

A B c

coal, was first introduced in 1938.

D

PRACTICE TEST 6

**Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.**

1. Which car is ?

a. she b. her c. hers d. herself

1. If you see Kevin give love.

a. him / my b. his / I

3.

I caught sight of a. I

4.

b. me

Tina’s cake was not delicious. She a. may have followed c. couldn’t have followed

c. himself / mine d. his / me in the mirror.

c. mine d. myself

the recipe very well.

5.

6.

7.

b. should not have followed d. can have followed

I do not know why this room is always so dirty. It every morning.

a. must be cleaning b. needn’t be cleaned

c. should be cleaned d. must clean

That is a secret. You tell anybody.

a. could not b. can c. should d. mustn’t

? - The blue one.

a. How much is your car c. Where is your car

b. Is your car blue d. Which car is yours

1. Peter generous or not?

a. Does b. Did c. Has

1. at that apartment? - Mr. Pike does.

a. Whom lives b. Whom does lives c. Who lives d. Who does he live

1. Preserving natural resources is great importance.

a. of b. in c. for d.

d. Is

at

11. His illness prevented him

a. over / before b. from / on

time.

completing his work

c. on / in d. with / at

12. Although we tried to persuade them, they did not approve our suggestions.

a. for

1. My boss let me a. have / to go
2. I regret

b. in

c. up

the afternoon off.

d. of

to my sister’s wedding.

a. inform

b. having / go c. to have / for going d. had / gone that we will not be able to give you a contract, b. to inform c. informing d. informed

15. David’s car would not start. He tried carburetor but it still would not work.

gasoline directly into the

16.

a. pour b. to pour c. poured d. pouring

is put off due to the fact that the president has had ill health.

17.

a. The tomorrow of conference c. Tomorrow conference The police are investigating \_

b. The conference of tomorrow d. Tomorrow’s conference

b. the loss of the teacher necklace d. the loss of the teacher’s necklace

a. the teacher’s necklace of the loss c. the teacher’s necklace loss

1. Some grammatical rules have been simplified in .

a. today English b. today’s English c. English today’s d. English today

1. The students in the classroom late several times this week.

a. come b. have come c. are coming d. will be coming

1. I to the United States tonight. I you a ring when I .

a. am flying / will give / arrive b. fly / would give / have arrived

c. am going to fly / could give / arrived d. will fly / have given / will arrive

1. They and a lot of money before they last year.

b. have worked / have saved / would retire d. had worked / saved / retired

a. are working / saving / will retire c. were working / saved / have retired

1. harmful to our health.

a. Smoke is b. Smoke are c. Smokes are

1. day is important.

a. Any b. Some c. Every

1. He has of computer science.

a. little knowledges b. a few knowledge c. little knowledge d. many knowledge

1. The student the calculations twice, but he could not find the mistake.

a. went over b. took in c. brought about d. looked up

1. She had to her job because she could not find a babysitter to

d. Smokes is

d. All

her children.

a. give up / look after

c. make out / do up

b. look forward to / take up d. put through / set aside

**PRACTICE TEST**

**173**

\_ the fire quickly; however the house was b. kick in / made off d. take in / lit up

1. Please convey my best wishes to your mother you see her.

27. The firemen managed to . a. make up / waved in c. put out / burnt down

a. since b. while

c. as d. and

heard anything from him?

c. but d. as

we had not seen her for years.

c. and d. so that

1. Have you met Peter

a. or b. and

1. We recognized her at once \_

a. though b. as

1. The news of the discovery .

a. have spread b. spread c. is spreading d. are spreading

1. Rice and beans, my favorite dish, me of my native Puerto Rico.

a. which remind b. have reminded c. remind d. reminds

1. Either the physicians in this hospital or the chief administrator

make a decision.

a. are having to c. have to

b. are going to have to d. is going to have to

1. The policeman accused Tom

a. a thief b. to be a thief

c. of a thief d. of being a thief

c. great pleasure d. with great pleasure

1. John wrote about his native village a. having pleasure b. as pleasure
2. , he has looked for a job.

a. Expelling from school last month c. Expelled from school last month

1. After expelling from school last month d. Was expelled from school last month

Internet

d .0/0

knowledge of computer science.

1. an / 0 d. 0 / the

bus every day.

1. an / the d. 0 / 0

b. a small round reading lamp

1. a reading lamp small round

b. a very long time for here d. for here a very long time

1. It is great to learn English on

a. 0 / the b. the / an c. an / the

1. She told Peter she had no

a. a / the b. the / the

1. John goes to school by .

a. the / a b. a / the

1. Peter has just bought .

a. a small reading round lamp c. a reading small round lamp

1. She has worked .

a. for a very long time here c. here for a very long time

1. The robbers escaped on

a. a huge wooden sailing ship

b. a wooden sailing huge ship d. a sailing huge wooden ship . by the earthquake.

d. are destroying with the virus by the end

c. a huge sailing wooden ship

1. Lots of houses in the village

a. were destroyed b. was destroyed c. destroys

1. It that about ten million children

of the decade.

a. estimates / will be infected c. was estimated / are going to infect

b. is estimated / will have been infected d. has estimated / are- being infected

1. After the storm, everything possible to get things back to normal.
2. has been doing b. has done c. is doing d. is being done
3. Under no circumstances animals.
4. accept can the bus b. can accept the bus

c. the can bus accept d. can the bus accept

1. hard physical work as we did before.
2. Any longer we do not do b. No more we do

c. No longer do we do ' d. No longer we do

1. , he could not make ends meet.
2. However hard he worked b. However did hard he work

c. However hard did he work d. Did he work however hard

1. I think going to market in New Year season is great .

a. excite b. excited c. exciting d. excitement

1. Crop rotation can help to prevent soil .

a. exhaust b. exhausted c. exhausting d. exhaustion

1. , we can earn enough to afford all basic of life.

a. Fortunate / necessary b. Fortunately / necessities

c. Unfortunately / necessarily

d. Unfortunate / necessitate

b. what happened d. has what happened

1. This is .

a. had what happened c. what did happened

1. doesn’t surprise me at all.
2. When was she married a wealthy person
3. If was she married a wealthy person
4. She married a wealthy person
5. That she married a wealthy person
6. me so disappointed.

a. What he told me made b. What did he tell me made

c. He told me made d. How did he tell me made

1. This is my first performance in Canada.
2. Firstly, I will perform in Canada.
3. I am used to performing in Canada.
4. I have never performed in Canada before.
5. One of my performances is in Canada.
6. During your absence we were doing very little work.
7. Your absence made US do a lot of work.
8. Because of your absence, we had too much work to do.
9. Very little were we working while you were away.
10. You were absent from work very little.
11. He lost due to a sharp pain in his foot.
12. A sharp pain in his foot could not prevent him from winning.
13. Even though he had a sharp pain in his foot, he managed to win.
14. Without a sharp pain in his foot, he would not have lost.
15. His loss had no relation to a sharp pain in his foot.

PRACTICE TEST 175

59

a. said to me not to stay up late c. told me do not stay up late

Mary said that her boss

a. will go / tomorrow

b. told me not to stay up late d. said did not stay up late

to London .

b. went / tomorrow d. had gone / the next day

b. whether did he live near there d. if he lived near there \_ in the suburbs, b. was located d. whose was located

c. would go / the next day

1. The girl asked him .

a. that he lives near here c. that did he live near there

1. She wanted to buy a house

a. which was located c. which it was located

1. is a famous artist, came to London in 1997.

a. Peter Hanson b. Peter Hanson, that

c. Peter Hanson who d. Peter Hanson, who

1. That is the man a. that
2. Please wait

dog destroyed our yard.

who c. whom

. I am making a phone call.

d. whose

a. as soon as b. until 65. He will let US know

c. while

d. during

66**.**

a. as soon as he arrives c. till he is arriving , everything had been ready

b. as he will arrive d. up to his arrival

b. Before the boss came d. No sooner the boss came

a. Until the boss came c. When the boss would come

1. , there are always going to be disadvantages.

a. You choose to live b. Wherever you choose to live

c. When you choose to live d. So you choose to live

1. The second half of the play was interesting L the first one.

a. less / as b. less / than c. little / as d. the least / than

1. What is

a. more far

1. This wine is

distance you have ever run?

the farrest  
\_ the others.

71.

a. as sweeter than c. a fewer sweet than I think about my exam,

1. the farthest d. more far

b. more sweeter than

1. a bit sweeter than happy I feel.

b. The much / the little d. Most / least

1. that problem with the car, we wouldn’t have missed the speech.

a. If we had had b. If had we had

c. Unless we had had d. Provided that we had had

1. If I a little taller, I be able to water the plant on the top shelf.

a. was / did b. were / would c. am / had d. had been / would have

1. Tom’s company will almost certainly sack him he improves his attitude

a. unless b. or c. otherwise d. if

a. The more / the less c. The most / the least

75. If it

last night, it

a. rained / is not

c. had rained / would not have been 76. The overall situation is good

\_ so hot today.

b. was raining / were not

d. had rained / would not be

77.

1. though of some minor problems
2. despite some minor problems
3. in spite there are some minor problems
4. despite there are some minor problems

habits are considered to be either bad or useless, most of the

habits that we have as adults are good ones.

a. Although b. Despite c. Despite of d. In spite

1. , Nicole was relieved that she had finally managed to get some sleep.

a. Even though she was still tired b. As though her tiredness

c. In spite her tiredness d. Though as she was tired

1. Many people are still destroying the environment nothing about

pollution and extinction, a. as they will know c. as though they knew

1. In that situation Meyers acted . a. as the sky had fallen c. as if the sky had fallen
2. We will solve the problem

a. like b. as

b. even if they had known d. as if they know

1. The leading actor preformed a. so well that b. such well that
2. The crowded cheered and booed

paused for a few minutes.

a. so / as b. such / as

1. The river made
2. as though the sky has fallen d. even if the sky had fallen

\_ we have ever discussed.

1. as if d. as though

many of the audience were moved to tears.

c. as well that excitedly \_

d. quite well that the match was

c. so / that I sometimes dreamt of it.

d. such / that

a. too a deep impression on me that b. such as a deep impression on me that c. so a deep impression on me that d. such a deep impression on me that

1. They have to work during the weekend .
2. so that everything can be ready on time
3. in order that ready on time
4. so as to everything can be ready on time
5. as for everything can be ready on time
6. Wild animals should be treated with caution .

a. so that they cannot do harm to US b. so cannot do harm to US

**c. so as that they cannot do harm to US** d. **such that** they **cannot** do harm to US

1. Some dolphins are trained

a. to lose b. so that losing

1. Paul was an hour late .

a. because of he missed the train

their fear of humans, c. so as to losing d. in order that to lose

c. as missing the train

b. because he missed the train d. due to the fact that missing the train

PRACr, T ^ST **177**

1. I think they may not come they have not replied to the invitation.

a. due to b. because c. because of d. for

1. Those workers are facing unemployment the financial difficulty

that the company has met.

a. as b. since c. because d. because of

**Error Identification**

1. Sports competitions can be harmful to the athletes who injure themselves

A B

because of they exceed the physical tolerances of their bodies.

c D

1. Present discoveries and inventions will surely be the found for many other

A B c

discoveries and inventions in the future.

D

1. Although the improvement in literacy has been steady and persistency.

A B c

there are still many illiterates in rural areas.

D

1. While the campaign, young volunteers helped build bridges, roads and one

A B

hundred houses for disadvantaged families.

c D

1. She decided remaining celibate and to devote her life to help the homeless

A B c D

and orphans.

1. If your friend tells you something in confidence, keeping it secret and never

A B c

tell about it to anyone else.

D

1. In 1977 Amnesty was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize for “defending human

A B c

worth against degrading treatment, violent and torture”.

D

1. Because China is overpopulated, its government considers the one-children

A B

policy as the best way to solve the problem.

c D

1. The world’s nonrenewable fossil fuels and others mineral deposits that took

A B c

millions of years to form are now 'being destroyed in decades.

D

1. Each year, natural forest cover is lose to such activities as illegal cutting

A B c D

and forest fires.

PRACTICE TEST 7

**Choose ay bf c, or d that is the best alternative.**

1. The customers the company before our boss .

a. was leaving / arrive b. already left / have arrived

c. has been left / were arriving d. had left / arrived

**2**.

3.

4.

6.

When the police to the scene of the accident, both drivers away.

a. will get / go b. get / will go c. got / had gone d. has got / went

She is so annoying. She 1 her dirty dishes in the sink.

a. always leaves b. will always leave

c. will be always leaving d. had always left

The last bus is at eleven. I miss it or else I be able to get home.

a. had better / will b. ought not to / needn’t

c. may / would d. mustn’t / won’t

You pay me back that money you owe me soon, or else!

a. had better b. would c. would prefer d. should not

“I help you,” John promised.

a. will b. would c. may d. could

7.

in her favorite armchair at home, c. sitting d. sat

8.

9.

She imagined herself

a. sit b. to sit

She objected children corporally.

a. to punishing b. to punish c. punishing d. punish

Sometimes we are made things that we do not want to do.

b. to do c. doing

he fell asleep.

b. while c. until

we will be late.

and c. but

d. done

a. do

1. He kept reading

a. when b

1. We must hurry

a. or else b

1. you need me, I’ll be at Tom’s.

a. In case b. But c. And

1. Some of the grain to be contaminated.

a. appear b. appears c. have appeared d. are appearing

1. There a book, two notebooks, and some pens on John’s table.

a. are b. were c. have been d. is

1. Each cat and each dog its own toy.

a. have b. has c. have got d. is having

1. have trouble with English pronunciation.

a. Quite students b. Quite many students

c. Quite a few students d. A little of students

1. He has of passing ,his exams.

a. any hopes b. a few hope c. a little hopes d. little hope

d. since

d. because

d. By the time

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 18. He knows | people in the class, | |
| a. few | b. a little | c. |
| 19. I am late, | ? |  |
| a. am I | b. am not I | c. |

c. a few

c. aren’t I

d. every

d. don’t I PRACTICE TEST 17S

21.

22.

20. us?

a. Will you join b. You will join c. Do you will join d. Have you join

do you come to visit your grandparents? - Twice a month.

a. How b. How often c. How long d. How about

is by the sea.

a. The Smith villa b. The Smith’s villa c. The Smiths villa d. The Smiths’ villa was a complete failure.

1. Last night’s performance d. Performance’s last night

for a museum since last year.

1. doorman d. man’s door

Mary said to me.

23.

24.

a. Last night performance c. Last night of performance He has worked as a \_\_\_\_\_\_

a. door’s man

1. man of door
2. “What a beautiful dress you have!”
3. Mary made a compliment on my beautiful dress.
4. Mary suggested that I should have that beautiful dress.
5. Mary advised me to wear that beautiful dress.
6. Mary objected to wearing that beautiful dress.
7. If only I were at home now.
8. I wish I were at home now. b. I do not want to be at home now.
9. I would rather not be at home now. d. I am at home now.
10. He was too anxious to do anything.
11. His anxiety didn’t have effects on him.
12. He did everything although he was very anxious.
13. He was so anxious that he could not do anything.
14. Everything was done thanks to his anxiety.
15. Many of disagree with the changes that are happening.

a. we b. our c. US d. ours

1. Did you want to talk to the chairman ' or could personal

assistant help you?

a. himself / his b. he / his c. him / he d. his\* / himself

1. Measles is a misery to children. dangerous.

a. They are b. It is c. There are d. Its

1. What did you do at Christmas? - I stayed at home and watched TV.

a. the / 0 / the b. 0 / the / the c. 0 / 0 / 0 d. the / the / 0

1. He was honest, hard-working lawyer but he hated job.

a. a / 0 b. an / the c. the / a d. 0 / the

33.

Pacific Ocean is

largest body of water on Earth, c. The / the d. 0 / 0

a. The /0 b. 0 / the

34. The house has just been sold.

b. pink painting c. painting pink

d. painted pink

a. to paint pink

1. , she decided to quit the job.

a. Feeling dissatisfied b. Felt dissatisfied

c. She feeling dissatisfied d. To be felt dissatisfied

1. My roommate, , has never been to Navy Pier before.

a. as a freshman from Geneva b. that a freshman from Geneva

c. is a freshman from Geneva d. a freshman from Geneva

37.

the early train tomorrow.

b. I probably will not take d. I will take not probably

b. have to always remind her d. have always to remind her

a. I will not take probably c. Probably will not I take

1. I to turn off the lights.

a. have to remind always her c. always have to remind her

1. For thousands of children every year, measles is .

a. a very serious illness b. a serious very illness

c. an illness very serious d. a very illness serious

1. Peter has just inherited a large sum of money his uncle.

a. from b. for c. as d. off

1. Babbage was born 1791 and brought to be a brilliant mathematics.

a. about / in b. on / for c. over / with d. in / up

1. Unfortunately, there was not enough demand our product.

a. for b. of c. to d. at

1. The mention of price increase in petrol sent citizens out to the fill stations

to as much as they could.

a. buy up b. sell for c. pay out d. stay away

1. Ben had planned a steak dinner for himself after on her plane.

a. seeing Jackie off c. running Jackie back

1. The firemen succeeded in a. putting the fire out

c. sending the fire for

1. Have you ever seen any outer space?

a. which took b. took

1. Natural resources

b. sending Jackie out d. following Jackie for

because they acted promptly.

b. sharing the fire with d. making the fire up

photographs from great distances in

taking

d. taken

a. are believed never to use up c. are believing to be used never up

1. Millions of dollars’ worth of damage a. has caused with a storm

c. has been causing by a storm

1. Only after a twelve-hour delay,

a. their plane did take off

c. did their plane take off

1. late

b. believed never used up

d. are believed never to be used up

b. has been caused by a storm d. has been caused with a storm

b. their plane took off d. their plane take off his books home.

1. Not only Tony was / but he had also left
2. Not only was Tony / but he had also left
3. Tony was not only / but had he also left
4. Was Tony not only / but also had he left from your seminars.

a. Should you be absent on no account b. Should you be absent on any account

c. On no account you should be absent d. On no account should you be absent

PRACTICE TEST 181

\_?” John’s brother advised him.

1. Why don’t you try again b. Why do you try again

**52.**

c. Why did you try again d. Why must you try again

1. Mary asked me he would come the next day or not.
2. if b. unless c. that d. when
3. Ronald asked me .
4. where Maria parked her car b. where did Maria park her car

c. where Maria parks her car d. where does Maria park her car

1. Work on the line is monotonous and lacks .
2. product / various d. productivity / vary is not .

a. production / variety c. produce / varied

56. Fitting into a different

a. culturist / easer b. cultural /

ease c. culturally / easily d. culture / easy

1. We all admire Michael Faraday for his story.

a. succeed b. success c. successful d. successfully

1. Dorothy Punch taught us our listening and pronunciation skills.
2. how we could improve d. how can we improve

a. how improve c. how improving Do you know

59,

1. will where we be taking the test d. where will we be taking the test

a. where we will be taking the test c. will we be taking the test where is unbelievable.

60.

a. All movies will be available

b. That all movies will be available d. That all movies which will be available

1. As all movies will be available
2. It is earth’s gravity people their weight.

a. that gives b. which to give c. gives d. whose gives

1. Bren comes from, has a lot of good curry restaurants.

a. Bradford, b. Bradford, where c. Bradford, that d. Bradford where

1. The book I borrowed from the library yesterday has lost some pages.

a. whom b. whose c. from which d. which

1. Someone stole my purse for the bus.

a. as soon as I am waiting b. since I was waiting

1. while I was waiting d. when I will wait
2. a joke, everybody roared with laughter.

a. When he is telling b. In case he told

1. Telling d. Every time he told
2. it rains, I prefer staying in bed and reading magazines.

a. Whenever b. As soon as c. Until d. Till

1. Put the sign .

a. in where everyone can read it b. where can everyone read it c. what everyone can read it d. where everyone can read it

1. Many people think that playing football is .

b. more than interesting

a. most interesting c. the most interesting

1. the more interesting

than her husband,

1. older
2. as many as your health becomes.

69. Mary is  
a. old

c. the older

1. We are both outgoing, but Mary does not talk

a. as much b. much as

1. cigarettes you smoke, \_

a. The more / the worse c. The most / the worst

1. If the demand increases,

a. prices will rise c. so prices will rise

1. What time would we get there \_ a. we took c. unless we take

d. more older I do.

d. so much as

b. The many / The bad

1. More / worse

b. prices would rise d. and prices rises \_ a taxi?

b. if we take d. provided that we took

1. , I would not have completed my overseas study.

a. My parents supported me b. Due to my parents’ support

c. Without my parents’ support d. If my parents supported me

1. a sudden storm, the climbers would not have died.

a. Unless there had been b. Provided that it were

c. Supposed d. If there were not

1. I need to buy a new coat soon the weather is getting cold.

a. because b. because of c. due to d. for

1. Because , I decided to go for a walk.

a. it was such a beautiful day b. such a beautiful day

c. of it was such a beautiful day d. of the day is beautiful

1. We all felt tired the hot weather.

a. because b. since c. as d. due to

1. only four years old, Oliver can do long multiplication.

a. Despite he is b. In spite of he is c. Despite d. In spite

1. I sympathize with your difficulties, there is little I can do to help you.

a. As though b. Even though c. Though of d. Despite

1. I will ask the boss for a rise .

a. as though losing my job c. although I may lose my job

b. even if losing my job

d. in spite of I may lose my job

1. The problem is not really complicated .

a. as I have ever thought b. as though I think

c. as if I thought d. as though I will think

1. Maiy has little knowledge of computer, but she often pretends a programmer.

a. if only she is b. if only she were c. as if she were d. as though she is

1. She has never gone abroad, but she talks about some foreign countries she had been there for a long time.

a. as if b. if only c. even if d. if

1. She fills her car up that she will not run out of gas during her trip.

a. in order to make sure b. so as she can make sure

c. so that making sure d. in order she can make sure

PRACTICE TEST 188

**Error identification**

1. Walls are being built around the reserve poachers from hunting

rare animals.

a. so preventing b. so as they prevent

c. so as to prevent d. so that preventing

1. Natural resources should be used economically they will not run

out some day.

a. in order to b. so as to c. as to d. in order that

1. carbon dioxide was emitted into the air the ozone layer is

being destroyed, a. So much / that

1. Many people are other intellectual a. such as addicted
2. It was \_

b. So many / that c. So much / as d. So many / as to the computer that they do not care about any

activities.

b. so many addicted c. so addicted d. such addicted a good arrangement there was not any a small mistake.

a. so / that

b. such / that

c. so / as

d. such / as

1. Exercise strengthens the heart, increases the level at which we burn fat,

A B

lowers the chance of high blood pressure and diabetes, and preventing loss

c D

of bone strength.

1. Having a good diet and doing exercise are all that those which want to live

A B c

long need to do as soon as possible.

D

1. Men has been interested in the stars ever since they first looked UP into the sky.

A B CD

1. Nonverbal communication or body language is communication by facial

A B c

expressions, head or eye movements, hand signals, but body postures.

D

1. One of the more famous monuments in the world, the Statue of Liberty,

A B

was presented to the US in the 19 century by the people of France, c D

1. When oil or coal is burnt, a great number of smoke that contains some kinds

A B c

of acid is produced.

D

1. People who ingest polluted water can become ill and with prolonged exposure,

A B

may develop cancers or getting children with birth defects.

c D

1. In 1969, the Cuyahoga River in Cleveland, Ohio, was such polluted with

A B

hazardous wastes that it caught fire and burned.

c D

1. It is reported that about 7 billion dollars is spent each year to treat the

A B c

diseases related to be overweight.

D

1. Nowadays, industry turns out more products at greater speed and with

A B

least labor to meet the demands of the rapidly increasing population, c D

PRACTICE TEST 8

**Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.**

2.

3.

The idea for redecorating the house came to my mind \_ a. as I drive b. when was driving c. when driving

What do you think our friends when we

a. will be doing / get b. are doing / will get

c. have done / will be getting d. had done / got

me to the airport, please? My car .

to work last week.

d. as I was driving to the party?

4.

1. Are you taking / breaks

d. Will you take / has been broken read at the age of three.

1. would d. might

5.

**6**.

a. Are you going to take / broke c. Do you take / has broken

The article stated that he

a. can b. could

You take a sweater in case it gets cold.

a. should b. needn’t c. mustn’t d. would

Be careful! Such small objects , causing serious injury or even death.

7.

a. needn’t swallow c. must swallow

It is obvious he is only interested a. to make b. in make

b. must be swallowing d. could be swallowed money.

c. to making d. in making

1. Anne couldn’t find a taxi so I offered her to the station.

a. drive b. to drive c. driving d. driven

1. Let me you some reasonable explanation.

a. give b. to give c. giving d. gave

1. I sat down drank my coffee.

a. and b. but c. so

d. therefore

11. Tina wanted to go home, a. so b. and

Dave did not. c. but

d. because

1. The police had searched thoroughly,

a. therefore b. so

1. Each of them a good seat.

a. have chosen b. are chosen

c. and

found nothing.

d. yet

c. was choosing d. choose

1. All of the dogs in the neighborhood .

a. barks b. was barking c. were barking d. has barked

1. Statistics a difficult subject.

a. is

b. are

c. were

d. was be

PRACTICE TE8T 185

1. Jack has

a. lots

1. There is

a. plenty of help

1. There is

. friends in Los Angeles, b. a lot c. a lot of

available at the library.

b. many helps to waste.

d. lot of

19.

20.

21.

22**.**

a. a great deal of times c. a little times

the matter with you?

a. What is d. How is

you ever witnessed a fire?

a. Do b. Are

Let’s begin now, ?

a. shall we b. will you

Do you often go to church on

a. Christmas’ Eve b. Christmas Eve

1. so many helps d. a few help

b. few time

1. little time

c. What does c. Have

c. are they

?

c. Christmas’s Eve

d. How does

d. Does

d. is it

d. Christmas of Eve

has soared over the past 20 years.

23

1. The world’s economy b. The world economy

c. The world of economy d. The economy world’s

1. The city leaders have not chosen the for a new university yet.
2. building’s site b. building site c. site of building d. building of site
3. “I regret not to take that work,” Tom said.
4. Tom promised not to take that work.
5. Tom agreed to take that work.
6. Tom refused to take that work.
7. Tom said he regrets not to take that work.
8. Sam is not as strong as Peter.

a. Both Sam and Peter are not strong, b. Neither Sam nor Peter is strong,

c. Peter is stronger than Sam. d. Sam is the strongest.

1. Mary is not old enough to live on her own.
2. Mary is old and lives independently.
3. Mary is too old to live on her own.
4. Mary is so young that she cannot live on her own.
5. Mary lives on her own although she is young.
6. Several neighbors of were at the party.

a. we b. us c. ours d. our

1. She lost key and locked in the room.

a. her / she b. her / herself c. hers / she d. herself / her

1. Anyone who drives car at 100 miles an hour is asking for trouble.

a. its b. our ' c. his d. hers

1. The lines at cinema were very long, so I had to wait for

long time.

a. the / a b. 0 / an c. the /0 d. 0 / the

\_\_ hour ago. Now, he has gone to Paris on business.

1. John was here a. a / the
2. Listen! Dennis is playing

a. a b. an

1. an / 0 c. the / a d. an / the

trumpet,

d. 0

1. the
2. , we had to complete the trip in two hours.

a. To reach the airport on time b. Reach the airport on time

c. As reaching the airport on time d. Reached the airport on time

1. That book, , is about science fiction.

a. is publishing last year b. is published last year

c. published last year d. publishing last year

1. John was .

a. extremely rich indeed b. as extremely rich indeed

c. for extremely rich indeed d. being extremely rich indeed

1. The River Reiner burst its banks .

a. after the heavy rain yesterday c. after yesterday the heavy rain

1. John used to drive .

a. an old German yellow car c. an old yellow German car

1. is a tiring work.

a. In the running summer, a marathon b. The summer running in a marathon c. Running a marathon in the summer d. A running marathon in the summer

1. The conference starts 8 am. Please be time.

c. on / at

b. the heavy rain after yesterday d. after the heavy yesterday rain

b. a German old yellow car d. a yellow German old car

a. at / on

1. Did you listen a. at / over
2. He is addicted a. about
3. His test score

b. in / off the news

d. for / in

the radio last night?

c. of / through d. for / in

b. to / on

the Internet, especially games online.

b. to c. from d. by

. They were very disappointed.

a. put his parents through b. let his parents down

c. took his parents on d. showed his parents off

1. He school because his family was in financial difficulty.

a. sent through b. dropped out of c. brought about d. turned into

1. My sister has recently yoga as a hobby.

a. taken up b. made over c. put on d. kept out

46.

by Mr. Pike, my friend’s father?

47.

48.

49.

a. Is the plane flying

c. Is the plane be flown

More and more foreign investments

a. have carried out

c. carried out

Anyone who reaches the tape first \_ a. will declare b. will be declaring so depressed.

b. Is the plane being flown d. Is the plane be flying in our country.

1. have been carried out d. are carrying to be the winner.
2. will be declared d. will have declared

b. Never he has felt d. Has he felt never

a. Has he never felt c. Never has he felt

, I never seem to be able to finish off a whole pizza.

a. However am I hungry b. However hungry am I

c. However I am hungry d. However hungry I am

PRACTICE TEST

**187**

to her birthday party the previous week.

a. said why did not I come c. asked why had not I come

1. “ ” my friend urged me.
2. Come on! Apply for the job,
3. Would you mind applying for the job?
4. The doctor may want to give an extra

as the measles .

1. Hardly home when
2. I had reached / I remembered c. had I reached / I remembered
3. Betty wanted to know .
4. where I went yesterday

c. where I had gone yesterday

1. She \_

\_ the message.

1. I had reached / did I remember d. had I reached / did I remember
2. where did I go the day before d. where I had gone the day before b. said why I did not come d. asked why I had not come b. Shall I apply for the job? d. I will apply for the job,

injection at the same time

b. protective / vaccination d. protector / vaccine

a. protection / vaccine c. protect / vaccinate 56. Drugs are one of the \_ a. medicine / value

profession’s most tools.

b. medical / valuable d. medicine / invaluable

c. medicate / valuably

1. A handshake should not be so \_

a. strength b. strengthen

1. He does not remember

that it hurts the other person.

1. strong d. strongly

at the accident.

a. that happened b. what happened c. happened d. happened what

1. is hire a tutor who can help them with their math skills.

a. What do they b. What should they do

1. They should do d. What they should do
2. depends on a computer or not.
3. That you will get the job / whether you can use
4. You will get the job / whether you can use
5. That you will get the job / you can use
6. You will get the job / you can use
7. The school library is an interesting place you can get necessary information.

a. in where b. which c. from that d. from which

1. Jonathan has a little sister he plays all the time.

a. with who b. with whom c. that d. whose

1. The woman next to me wants to ask a question.

a. sitting b. sits c. whom is sitting d. whose is sitting

1. Lee came to the country, he could not speak any word of English!

a. Since b. While ' c. No sooner d. Before

1. the news, I rushed straight to the police station.

a. Before I have heard c. While I was hearing

1. Whenever I hear

d. As soon as I had heard they arrive.

1. by the time d. up to
2. We will have finished our work a. by b. until
3. The little boy said to his friend, “Hide this toy car .”

a. that other boys cannot find it b. where other boys cannot find it c. where cannot other boys find it d. so where other boys cannot find it

1. the people in the world are living in poverty.

a. As many as half b. So many as half c. More half than d. As much as half

1. Which mountain is , the Andes or the Rockies?

a. higher b. the higher c. more higher d. the highest

1. Do it when you can but it is done, .

a. soon / it is good b. sooner / better

c. the more soon / the more good d. the sooner / the better

1. You succeed again! You must be man in the world.

a. happy b. the happier c. happiest d. the happiest

1. You may get malaria by a mosquito.

a. if you are bitten b. unless you were bitten

c. if you would be bitten d. unless you would be bitten

1. The company will cancel the commercial they increase their earnings.

a. unless b. if c. provided that d. without

1. If I it was a formal party, I wearing jeans and a jumper.

a. knew / would not go b. had known / would not have gone

c. had been knowing / did not go d. could know / will not have gone

1. it were well-paid, I would accept this job.

a. Providing b. Unless c. But for d. If only

1. I left home early I had some important things to do.

a. for b. because c. because of d. due to

1. Because , he is seldom at home.

a. of his business b. his business

c. of there is a lot of business d. a lot of business

1. it is your birthday, you can sit in the front.

a. Thanks to b. Due to c. Because of d. Since

1. , she has not succeeded in the examination.

a. Even though Sarah’s cleverness b. Although Sarah is clever

c. Despite Sarah is clever d. In spite her cleverness

1. the difficulties, they continued their plan.

a. Even if b. Despite c. In spite d. Even though

1. I could not persuade him to change his mind.

a. Even though trying my best b. Despite I tried my best

c. Although I tried my best d. In spite of I tried my best

1. It was a cold day we wrapped ourselves in blankets.

a. such / that b. so / that c. such / as d. so / as

1. We have time left that we have to take a taxi to the airport.

a. so little b. such little c. so many d. such many

1. There were in the sky that we could not see much.

a. so clouds b. so many clouds c. such clouds d. such many clouds

PRACTICE TEST 189

1. He had his car checked in the garage make sure that it would be

ready for his trip.

a. so b. so that c. so as to d. in order that

1. A lot of people head for the mountains with warm sleeping bags

they can sleep out and watch the stars.

a. in order to b. so as to c. so that d. that

1. Let’s go upstairs and talk a bit of privacy.

a. so for getting b. in order we get c. so that getting d. so as to get

1. The widow acted .

a. as if her husband had not died c. as her husband had not died

b. as though her husband does not die d. as if her husband would not died

1. Practice more frequently .

a. as your teacher has advised c. even if your teacher advised

b. as if your teacher had advised d. as though your teacher has advised an outsider.

1. She has caused a lot of troubles but she behaves

a. as she were b. as she had been

c. as though she were d. as if she is

**Error identification**

1. To achieve independent has been the goal of many nations since World War II.

A B c D

1. Though it was writing for children, Alice in Wonderland appeals to many

A B c

adult readers.

D

1. Exceeding speed limits and foil to wear safety bells are two common causes

A B c D

of automobile death.

1. Gabriel Marquez, after received his 1982 Nobel Prize for Literature, appeared

A B c

on the cover of Time magazine.

D

1. Ships can only reach Antarctica during a relatively short period because the

A B c D

extremely cold condition.

1. Though both cats and dogs existed before human beings, without man, they will

A B CD

not have developed as many varieties.

1. Fruit and vegetables should be carefully washed whether eaten fresh or cook.

A ' B c D

1. Oscar Wilde lived out his final days in obscurity in France in spite the brilliance

A B c D

of his early career.

1. The Olympic Games, first celebrated in Athens in 1896, were held every

A B c

four years so far, except during the two world wars.

D

100. When they were first introduced, electronic calculators were less powerful A B c

and cost many more than they do today.

D

PRACTICE TEST 9

**Choose ay b, c, or d that is the best alternative.**

1. On the first of next month, John for that computer company for five years.

a. will work b. will be working

c. will have worked d. would have worked

1. Those trees last month. Now they .

a. planted / grow b. have planted / are grown

c. are planted / are being grown d. were planted / are growing

1. when the earthquake last week?

a. What did you do / would start b. What had you done / has started

c. What have you done / starts d. What were you doing / started

1. Jenny’s engagement diamond ring is enormous! It a fortune.

a. can be costing b. should be cost c. must cost d. cannot cost

1. You look a bit confused. I help you?

a. Would b. Can c. Needn’t d. Should

1. I am absolutely sure. They yesterday. I saw their ticket.

a. should have arrived b. must have arrived

c. must be arriving d. might have arrived

1. I would rather you harder and more carefully.

a. work b. to work c. working d. worked

1. The advertiser promised us the new brochure as soon as it is available.

a. send b. to send c. sending d. sent

1. Mr. Pike avoids the car whenever possible, especially in big cities.
2. The movie, including all the previews, about two hours to watch.

|  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| a. take b. to take | c. taking | d. | taken |
| 10. I can give you neither an opinion | any advice. |  |  |
| a. or b. but | c. nor | d. | and |
| 11. John read the book. did not understand it. | |  |  |
| a. and b. but | c. or | d. | moreover |
| 12. He walked up to the door | knocked. |  |  |
| a. and b. otherwise | c. but | d. | so |
| 13. Annie and I to join vou. |  |  |  |
| a. am going b. is going | c. has gone | d. | are going |
| 14. Either my mother or my sisters | to the meeting. | |  |
| a. was coming b. comes | c. has come | d. | are coming |

a. takes b. take c. have taken d. were taking

1. There are that make children more likely to be wakeful at night.

a. several different factor b. several different factors

c. a great deal of different factors d. a great deal of different factor

PRACTICE TEST Ỉ91

1. There are not on the pavement.
2. much trees b. many trees c. a lots trees

d. a lot of tree

d. no

1. He lost his money at a casino in Las Vegas.
2. all b. any

c. a number of

?

c. won’t it

d. will they

1. The situation will be better, ;

a. isn’t it b. does it

1. laptop is it?

a. Which b. What

1. ? - She’s at work.

a. Does she at work

c. Is she at work

1. She’s at .

a. the doctor office b. the doctor’s

1. Most is acute.

a. animals’

c. Whose

d. Who

sense’s smell c. animals sense of smell

1. Does she at home or at work d. Is she at home or at work
2. doctor’s office d. the office of doctor

b. animals’ smell of sense

1. animals’ sense of smell
2. is especial. I think it has been love at first sight.
3. Date tonight b. Tonight of date c. Tonight date d. Tonight’s date
4. I would rather you did not do such a stupid thing again.
5. Such a stupid thing has been done many times.
6. You have done such a stupid thing many times.
7. I hope you will not do such a stupid thing again.
8. You can do such a stupid thing as many times as possible.
9. School rules must not be ignored.
10. You needn’t obey the school rules.
11. School rules needn’t be observed.
12. School rules are not important to you.
13. You must take notice of the school rules.
14. I regret behaving so rudely to you.
15. Behaving so rudely to you was not my concern.
16. I was not sorry for behaving so rudely to you.
17. I will never mind behaving so rudely to you.
18. I wish I had not behaved so rudely to you.
19. Archie came to see off.

a. we b. us c. our d. ours

1. Women are always moved when they find somebody who understands

better than they know .

a. their / theirs b. they / them, c. themselves / their d. them / themselves

1. The company closes because cannot increase profit.

a. its / it b. it / it’s c. itself / it d. it / its

1. Our children go to school by bus.

a. the / a b. the / the c. a / the d. 0 / 0

1. summer of 1996, when I was born, was hot and dry.

b. An

d. 0

The

a. A

1. How about going to Netherlands next summer?
2. 0 / 0 b. the / the c. the /0 d. 0 / the
3. There was a sound .
4. in the living room b. it is in the living room

c. so in the living room d. as to be in the living room

1. Jennifer and I went to the mall to buy a blender, .
2. it is a necessary tool for making milkshakes
3. a necessary tool for making milkshakes
4. that a necessary tool to make milkshakes
5. for it is a necessary tool for making milkshakes
6. We picked up the records .
7. that broken in the scuffle c. breaking in the scuffle

b. broken in the scuffle

d. it is breaking in the scuffle

b. just has been recently bought d. has been just bought recently

b. in the company in best town d. in town in the best company

1. That beautiful car .

a. recently has just been bought c. has just been bought recently

1. He got a job .

a. in best company in the town c. in the best company in town

1. I like her .
2. black long straight hair d. straight long black hair

a. hair long straight black c. long straight black hair 40. She is interested a. about / in

dressing. She spends a lot of money

clothes.

1. over / at c. in / on d. at / for

shares.

1. I think you should invest

a. in b. for

1. Bye! See you Christmas.

a. upon b. on

1. I have
2. on d. about
3. at d. in

the problem several times, but I cannot a solution.

a. looked after / turned off b. gone over / think of

c. put out / got through d. come for / threw out

very well together, d. gone out

1. Mary and I are best friends. We have always

a. taken over b. got on c. put in

1. I am sure everything will OK in the end.

a. hold on b. take off c. turn out d. go up

1. They have not seen him anywhere since last week.
2. He has been nowhere to be seen since last week.
3. He has not been seen nowhere since last week.
4. He has not seen anywhere since last week.
5. He has been not seen anywhere since last week.
6. I will call you as soon as my work \_.

a. will be finished b. was finished c. has been finished d. had been finished

1. People say that the bridge was destroyed in the war.
2. The bridge says being destroyed in the war.
3. The bridge is said being destroyed in the war.

PRACTICE TEST 193

1. The bridge is said to be destroyed in the war.
2. The bridge is said to have been destroyed in the war.

Seldom the opportunity to do whatever .

a. did we have / did we want b. did we have / we wanted

50.

c. we had / we wanted

, we would have a barbecue.

a. The weather was fine c. Is the weather fine

d. we had / did we want

b. Were the weather fine d. The weather is fine

51.

that

nothing.

1. Such a sorrow did she suffer / she could say
2. Such a sorrow did she suffer / could she say
3. Did she suffer such a sorrow / she could say
4. Did she suffer such a sorrow / could she say
5. The boss .
6. asked me if have the customers arrived
7. said if the customers have arrived
8. asked me if the customers had arrived
9. said to me if the customers had arrived
10. The doctor told me worry because my illness serious.

a. not be / is not b. not to be / was not

c. do not be / has not been d. not being / will not be

1. Tom told Mary he had bought a new car three days .

a. then 55. It is

b. after

that leads to the

56.

57.

a. pollution / loss b. pollute / lost The aim of the new policy is the . a. preservation / peace c. preservative / peacefully The most terrible destroy

c. ago d before

of the ozone layer.

c. polluted / lose d. pollutant / lose

of .

a. destroy b.

58. I was really surprised a. what she said c. what did she say

b. preserve / peaceful d. preserved / peaceable

of tropical forests is fires.

destructive c. destruction d. destroyer

59.

b. by what she said d. by what did she say should not be important to the friendship.

1. How much money your friends make
2. How much money do your friends make
3. Your friends can make how much money
4. Can your friends make money or not
5. English teachers dispense wisdom to .

a. listening b. will who listen c. that listens d. whoever will listen

1. have young children do not have much time for themselves.

a. Those who b. Whom c. Those which d. With whom

1. Do you know the reason Isabel was not in class today?

a. for that b. that c. at which d. why

This is the girl a. whose

car hit that tree last week.

b. who c. which

1. I have played tennis 1 was a young boy.

a. as b. since c. after

1. Her brother got married he finished college.

a. before b. in order that c. if only

1. You should give the iron time to heat up .

a. while you will iron your clothes c. before you iron your clothes Put the vase .

d. that

d. until

d. provided

b. after you are ironing your clothes d. as you will iron your clothes

67

b. because the children cannot reach it d. where cannot the children reach it

a. as the children cannot reach it c. where the children cannot reach it

1. It was castle we visited during our holidays

a. older b. more old than c. the oldest d. eldest

1. Most poor people are prepared for their future than the rich ones are

little

b. less

c. least

d. the least

70.

I forget!

I get,

a. The older / the more c. The oldest / more

71. I speak English .

a. more good than John does c. better than John is

b. The old / the most d. Older / more

b. as good as John is d. better than John does

72. You can seek a place in the university

its requirements.

a. unless you would meet c. if you meet

73. If you to come,

b. in case you will meet d. if you will meet me as soon as possible, b. wanted / please contacting d. will want / please to contact

a. want / please contact c. would want / please contacted

1. you apologize, I will not forgive you.

a. If b. Unless c. Provided that d. In case

1. Keep quiet you out.

a. if I would send b. 1 would have sent

c. unless I would send d. or I will send

1. Janna was absent for 3 weeks her illness.

c. since d. as

to let her down.

b. because they did not want

a. because b. because of

77. They did not tell her the truth a. because of they did not want c. because not wanting

78.

d. due to not wanting Ann was cheated by the salesmen, she was angry. Because of b. Due to c. Since d. For

\_ Susan has a good job, she cannot afford to move out of her parents’ house, a. Although b. Despite c. In spite of d. In spite

80. Mary knows that she has to change her diet .

a. In spite of her love of sugary snacks b. Even though her love of sugary snacks c. Despite she loves sugary snacks d. Despite of her love of sugary snacks

PRACTICE TEST 19Ỗ

79.

. the damaging effect of cars are now well-recognized, the number of

cars on the road continues to grow every year.

81. .

a. If b. As if c. If only d. Even if

1. We keep our food in the fridge .

a. so that not to go bad b. such that it does not go bad

c. in order so that it does not go bad d. so that it does not go bad

1. Hockey players wear lots of protective clothing they do not get hurt.

a. so as b. in order c. so as to d. in order that

1. Women used to make great efforts recognitions in every aspect.

a. so that getting b. in order to get c. so as to getting d. as order to get

1. The rain was they could not go on their trip.

a. so heavy that b. such heavy that c. as heavy that d. such heavily that

1. Johnny worked hard he made himself ill.

a. so / that b. so / as c. such / that d. such / as

1. the town took decades to recover.

a. So great the destruction was that b. Such great was the destruction that

c. So great was the destruction that d. So great the destruction was that

1. Her company was broke, but she acted

a. as though nothing will happen c. as if nothing had happened I will do it .

b. as nothing has happened d. as though nothing happens

b. as I have ever promised d. as though I had promised

b. as if she were a princess d. as though she is a princess

89.

a. as though I promised c. as if I have ever promised

1. She is used to talking

a. if she were a princess c. as if she is a princess

**Error identification**

1. Vietnam faces a challenge which it is the rapid increase of motor vehicles,

A B c

particularly in the big cities.

D

1. The environment in Vietnam is seriously affected by three main factors:

A B

rapid population grow, migration, and urbanization, c D

1. Millions of years ago, water covered much of how is now North America.

A B c D

1. As personal incomes grow and vehicles become more affordable, problems

A ' B

associated with pollution have emerged like a major urban issue, c D

1. After months of colder weather, the days get longer, the buds come out in

A B c

the trees, birds sing, and the world put on a green dress.

D

1. Man is constant destroying the natural resources which keep him alive.

A B c D

1. Several developed countries have had a rapid decline in fertility because

A B c

many women there have delayed to have children.

D

1. It is estimated that the population of Vietnam will reach 100 million for

A B c

the next 25 years and will stabilize at 120 million by the middle of this century.

D

1. Many years ago, the climate of North America became such cold that great

A B

sheets of ice covered most of Canada.

c D

1. Man is damaging the balance of nature which regulates climate and the

A B

atmosphere, produces and maintain healthy soils, provides food from the seas.

c D

PRACTICE TEST 10

**Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.**

1. While John last night, someone his car.

a. was sleeping / stole b. is sleeping / has stolen

c. had slept / was stealing d. slept / had stolen

1. She golf for three hours by the time she the round.

a. is playing / will finish b. has been playing / finishes

c. will have been playing / finishes d. was playing / finished

1. Every day John at the company at 8 o’clock, but this morning he

late because he the bus.

a. arrives / was / missed b. has arrived / has been / was missing

c. is arriving / is / has missed d. was arriving / had been / has missed

1. I this work before I leave.

a. must to finish b. must finish

c. should have finished d. needn’t to finish

1. The concert wonderful last night because Fiore is always a great conductor.

a. should have been b. must have been c. may be d. could be

1. Children with cleaning liquids.

a. mustn’t play b. needn’t play

c. would be playing d. had not better play

1. I intend to my boss about your complaint.

a. speak b. to speak c. speaking d. spoken

1. Peter was delighted a former colleague at the conference.

a. meet b. to meet c. meeting d. met

1. We finished the job 12 hours a day.

a. to work b. by work c. by working d. worked

PRACTICE TEST 197

1. She is well-educated. , she has very good manners.
2. And b. Besides c. However d. But
3. They got off the train. they began to search for a hotel.
4. Then b. And c. But d. However
5. I was worried; , I was determined not to show it.

a. and so b. and yet c. but d. nevertheless

1. The International Club, as well as the Choral Society and the Rowing Club, to submit a new constitution.

a. needs b. need c. are needing d. have needed

1. A large percentage of the older population against Ms. Helen Young.

a. vote b. have voted c. are voting d. is voting

1. The woman with her dogs by my house every morning.

a. walks b. walk c. is walking d. are working

1. There is left on the table.

a. a few food b. a little food c. many foods d. foods

1. I have friends in Chicago.

a. every b. no c. any d. the number of

1. I have got extra money saved up in the bank.

a. a few b. many c. some d. any

1. Things have been ready, ?

a. do they b. aren’t you c. has it d. haven’t they

1. are your children? - They are fine.

a. How b. What c. Who d. How about

1. arrived home safely?

a. Does Peter b. Peter did c. Has Peter d. Will Peter

1. is the pink one, looking over the sea.

a The Pikes’ house b. The Pike’s house c. The Pikes’s house d. The Pike house

1. will be indoors as it is getting colder.

a. Party’s next week b. Next week of party

c. Next week party d. Next week’s party

1. A is a place where drinks, small meals, tea, and cakes are served.

a. room’s tea b. room of tea c. tea’s room d. tea room

1. As soon as John arrived at the pub, the lights went out.
2. The lights went out before John arrived at the pub.
3. No sooner had John arrived at the pub than the lights went out.
4. John arrived at the pub where there were not lights.
5. The lights went out because John arrived at the pub.
6. Mr. Pike will get some workers to dig the garden.
7. Mr. Pike will have the garden'dug.
8. The garden will be dug by Mr. Pike and some workers.
9. Mr. Pike and some workers will dig the garden.
10. Both Mr. Pike and some workers will dig the garden.
11. There is no doubt that he will win the gold medal.
12. He can never win the gold medal.
13. That he will win the gold medal is not known.

29.

1. We are not sure that he will win the gold medal
2. We are sure that he will win the gold medal.

ideas of the new policy are quite different from

a. His / mine b. He / my c. Him / I

My wife has become crippled by arthritis. She doctor about .

c. them

a. it b. herself

1. They all seemed to be enjoying .

a. their b. they c. theirs

1. He went to United States to learn

a. 0 / 0 b. an / the c. the / 0

1. He has good knowledge of computers.

a. a b. an c. the

1. It was excellent meal. It was better than

b. a / an

d. His / me

embarrassed to ask the d. him

d. themselves computer science, d. the / a

a. an / the

1. He is opening his mouth .

a. very wide b. to be very wide

1. Lightning flashed brightly

a. as in the sky

c. it is in the sky

c. the / an

d. 0

one which we had last night. d. an / an

1. being very wide d. so very wide

b. when in the night sky

1. in the night sky

36.

is before a water shortage.

1. Being the best time to practice water conservation
2. When the best time to practice water conservation
3. The best time practice water conservation
4. The best time to practice water conservation

37. The children went .

38.

a. yesterday afternoon to a film c. to a film afternoon yesterday The infection was probably caused

b. to a film yesterday afternoon d. afternoon yesterday to a film

b. by swimming in contaminated water d. by swimming in water contaminated

a. in contaminated water by swimming c. in water contaminated by swimming

1. I will buy when I get the salary.

a. a new English dictionary b. an English new dictionary

c. a new dictionary English d. an English dictionary new

1. Southern Rail would like to apologize the late running of this train.

a. upon b. with

1. You have to be responsible

a. from / at b. over / on

1. It is the lack gravity

of 30 feet or more.

a. from / at b. of / on

1. Supply of goods is failing to

a. make of b. look for

1. the shoes to see if they fit.

a. Go on b. Get in

d. for

the work.

c. in / through d. to / for the moon that makes possible leaps

c. at

your boss

c. in / through . demand, c. put on

c. Take off

d. at / over d. keep up with d. Try on

PRACTICE TEST

1. The police because there was no evidence of his guilty.
2. took him over b. put him through c. let him off d. sent him in
3. Many children’s breath by the pollution in the city.
4. is affecting b. is affect c. is being affected d. affected
5. Dr. Fleming, who penicillin, the Nobel Prize of Medicine in 1945.
6. was discovered / was awarded b. discovered / was awarded

c. discovering / awarded d. discovers / awarding

1. Have they sent Peter the document he needs yet?
2. Has Peter was sent the document he needs yet?
3. Does Peter have been sent the document he needs yet?
4. Has Peter been sent the document he needs yet?
5. Has been Peter sent the document he needs yet?
6. the room when .
7. Scarcely we had entered / did the telephone ring
8. Scarcely had we entered / did the telephone ring
9. Scarcely we had entered / the telephone rang
10. Scarcely had we entered / the telephone rang
11. us us some money.
12. Not only Peter helped / but also lent
13. Not only Peter helped / but did he also lend
14. Not only did Peter help / but also lent
15. Not only did Peter help / but he also lent
16. \_\_\_\_\_ that it three times.
17. So interesting is the film / have we seen
18. So interesting is the film / we have seen
19. So interesting the film is / we have seen
20. So interesting the film is / have we seen
21. Nancy wanted to know to New York .
22. why Nick did not go / last summer
23. why Nick had not gone / the summer before
24. why did not Nick go / last summer
25. why had Nick not gone / the summer before
26. John advised Mary so hard.

a. did not work b. not working c. not to work d. had not worked

1. I asked myself the old painting I had found was worth any money or not.

a. that b. if c. that if d. if that

1. The patient who suffers from lung cancer is being injected with a special .

a. chemist b. chemistry c. chemical d. chemically

1. is very important in using lasers.

a. Precise b. Precisely c. Precisive d. Precision

1. At last, we were able to draw a .

a. conclude b. conclude c. conclusive d. conclusion

1. Mr. Jones is valuable for .

a. he knows about history b. what does he know about history

c. what he knows about history d. what knowing about history

is unimportant.

59.

1. 61. 62.

63.

64.

65.

66.

67.

68.

69.

70.

71.

72.

73.

74.

75.

1. He won or lost b. Whether did he win or lose

c. Whether he won or lost d. What did he win or lose

is a painting by Vincent Van Gogh.

a What you see now b. What do you see c. You see now d. Do you now

That is the young man we owe many thanks.

a. to whom b. who c. that d. to that

It is the boss is the most important.

a. whose decision b. that decides c. who decides d. which decision

Please tell me the time I can come for the interview.

a. that b. when c. on that d. where

You shouldn’t drive alcohol.

a. after you have drunk b. while you will drink

c. after drink d. as soon as you will drink

, the first thing we saw was a church.

a. No sooner we approach b. Soon before approaching

c. As we approached the village d. When we would approach the village

had they finished their project than they prepared for another one.

a. No until b. As long as c. As soon as d. No sooner

Don’t go away from me. Stand .

a. where I can see you b. where can I see you

c. where to see you d. in where I can see you

Miss World is even in real life in photos.

a. as beautiful / more b. more beautiful / as

c. the more beautiful / than d. more beautiful / than

It seems that we have for ourselves and our family.

a. more time than b. less and less time c. as many time as d. time less than

They are both pretty but Susan is the of the two.

a. most pretty b. prettiest c. prettier d. pretty

That washing machine is but in quality.

1. a bit more expensive / better than
2. a bit as expensive / many better
3. a little more than expensive / more good
4. a little bit more expensive / much better

If we the map, lost now.

a. took / would not have got b. had taken / we would not have got

c. take / will not get d. had taken / we would not get

You will have to pay higher insurance a sports car.

a. if you buy b. if you will buy

c. unless you bought d. provided that you did not buy

If the traffic bad, I may get home late.

a. is b. were c. was d. had been

If you take the 8 a.m. flight to New York you change the plane.

a. could not have to b. will not have to c. had not had to d. would not to have to

PRACTICE TEST 201

1. past deforestation and illegal hunting, many species of mammals

and flora have disappeared.

a. Because of b. Because c. As d. Since

1. Those children have stayed in the hospital for a long time

a. due to they are seriously ill b. because of they are seriously ill

c. because their serious illnesses d. because of their serious illnesses

1. You need proper shoes to go hiking in the mountains the ground is rough and hard.

a. because of b. due to c. since d. thanks to

1. the same class with Paul for two years, I never knew him very well.

a. Even though sharing b. In spite I shared

c. Although I shared d. Despite of sharing

1. Hard-working he is, he will never be top of his class.

a. although b. as c. despite d. in spite

1. thousands of accidents happen every day, many people seem not to

observe the traffic laws.

a. If b. As if c. If only d. Even if

1. The thieves are running as fast as possible caught by the police.

a in order that not be b. so that being c. so as not to be d. in order be

1. Mary closed the door and the window disturbed by the noise.

a. so that she was not b. in order that not to be

c. so as was not d. so as she was not

1. Keep your password secret others cannot access your account.

a. so as that b. so as to c. in order to d. so that

1. She made she failed the exam.

a. such many mistakes that b. so many mistakes that

c. many so mistakes that d. many such mistakes that

1. He had he went hiking.

a. such many time that b. so much time that

c. so few time that d. such few time that

1. They worked hard they passed the exam at high grades.

a. so / that b. such / that c. so / as d. such / as

1. It was his mistake but he pretended nothing wrong.

a. as if b. as there had been

c. as though there had been d. as though there has been

1. She was deeply sad after her husband’s death, but she behaved

she had been OK.

a. if b. as if c. even if d. if only

1. Operate the machine .

a. as if you have been instructed b. as if were instructed

c. as you have been instructed d. as though you have been instructed

**Error identification**

1. From bones finding in the United States, we have learned that many animals

A B

which no longer existed in the world once made their homes there.

c D

1. Although they are an inexpensive supplier of vitamins, minerals, and high quality

A B

protein, eggs contain a high level of blood cholesterol, one of the major cause

c D

of heart disease.

1. There may be 8,000 or more people ran in the race through the streets of

ABC D

San Francisco.

1. Since the world was industrialized, the number of animal species that has

A B c

become extinct has increased.

D

1. With as few as 5,000 tigers remaining in the world today, time is running quick

A B c D

out for this powerful animal.

1. If you are not **completely** satisfied on our goods, **contact** US within ten days

ABC and we will arrange collection and refund your money in full.

D

1. It is often said that an early life of hardship and poverty made Abraham

A B

Lincoln to be the great leader he was.

c D

1. From the beginning of the twentieth century to the present, technology has

A

developed too much that people begin to think that there are no limits to B c D

what we can achieve.

1. Uranium, found in trace quantities, are an exceedingly rare and potentially

A B c D

dangerous element.

1. There was during the Industrial Revolution that the United States was

A B

able to increase productivity through mechanization.

c D

PRACTICE TEST n

**Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.**

1. He this book for 3 months by the end of this week.

a. has been writing b. was writing c. is writing d. will have written

1. It dry here at this time of the year. It much.

a. is usually / does not rain b. has usually been / is not raining

c. will usually be / has not rained d. was usually / will rain

1. Yesterday evening the phone three times while you

dinner out with your friends.

a. would have rung / are having b. was ringing / have been having

c. rang / have had d. had rung / were having

**PRACTICE TEST 203**

1. John lazy but he is certainly not stupid.

a. should be b. may be c. mustn’t be d. must have been

1. My little brother Japanese and French though he is only ten years old.

a. can speak b. must be speaking

c. should have spoken d. shouldn’t be speaking

1. You to do the homework or the teacher will punish you.

a. mustn’t forget b. needn’t forget c. will be forgetting d. must have forgot

1. Bob sent a report to the Chairman instead the meeting.

a. to attend b. to attending c. of attending d. attended

1. I regret you that you did not pass the test. However, you should try

it again.

a. telling / do b. told / doing c. told / done d. to tell / to do

1. It is no use the boss for a pay rise.

a. ask b. to ask c. asking d. asked

1. She does not study very well I think she will pass her exams.

a. but b. so c. and d. or

1. We like games and music, reading.

a. as b. as well as c. but d. therefore

1. She was not in the back yard, was she upstairs.

a. or b. nor c. and d. so

1. Do not add to the machine. Just will be enough.

a. some oil / no drop b. a few oil / a little drop

c. many oils / any drop d. too much oil / some drops

1. Bill spends \_\_\_ money on clothes, but on travelling

a. a little / some b. as many / some c. a few / many d. little / much

1. We have to do.

a. few homeworks b. any homework c. a lot of homework d. some homeworks

1. from here to the station? - Only 2 kilometers.

a. How far is it b. How far does it c. How long is it d. How long does it

1. You used to live in London, ?

a. don’t you b. didn’t you c. weren’t you d. haven’t you

1. the room been cleaned yet?

a. Does b. Has c. Is d. Was

1. Eight dollars the price of a movie these days.

a. are b. is c. have been d. were

1. the news on at 5 or 6 o’clock?

a. Is b. Are c. Have d. Were

1. Seeing films my favorite hobby.

a. is b. are c. were d. were used to be

1. I have just bought a cottage by .

a. the lake side b. the lake’s side

c. the side of the lake d. the side’s lake

1. I think your proposals are the same as .

a. Peter b. Peter’s c. it of Peter d. this of Peter

1. All of them hope that everything will be ready in .
2. three day time b. three days’ time c. three-day’s time d. time three days
3. Peter was not always so hopeless.
4. Peter never had a hope for anything, b. Peter was used to being hopeless, c. Peter gave up his hope. d. Peter did not use to be so hopeless.
5. The number of people who approved of his ideas exceeded his expectations.
6. He had expected that nobody would disapprove of his ideas
7. He had expected that everybody would approve of his ideas.
8. Less people approved of his ideas than he had expected.
9. More people approved of his ideas than he had expected.
10. Julie and Anne had not met each other before the party.
11. Julie and Anne got acquainted when they were at the party.
12. The party prevented Julie and Anne from meeting each other.
13. The party was the place where Julie and Anne could not meet each other.
14. Julie and Anne used to meet each other for the party.
15. Mountain gorillas are an endangered species. habitats are being destroyed.

a. Its b. His c. Her d. Their

1. John admitted that he would take any blame.

a. itself b. himself c. themselves d. ourselves

1. When lived in the village, only light was candles and an oil lamp.

a. we / ourselves b. we / our c. our / ours d. ourselves / we

1. , she went to bed.
2. On reading a book and a newspaper after that
3. Reading a book and a newspaper then
4. After reading a book and a newspaper
5. To read a book and a newspaper
6. , you may have only one solution.

a. In such a matter like this b. Like this matter

c. In case the matter such as this \* d. Being this matter

1. Peter was the last person .

a. to learn the news b. for learning the news

c. learnt the news d. the news learnt

1. Only one of world’s ten highest peaks is located outside of Himalayas.

a. the / the b. the / an c. 0 / 0 d. the / 0 \*

1. flower gets its smell from oil that the plant produces.

a. The / an b. A / the c. 0 / 0 d. A / an

1. cattle raising began in Texas before Civil War.

a. 0 / 0 b. 0 / the c. A / the d. The / 0

1. On the trip to Paris, Mrs. Young fell in love with .

a. an interesting young man b. a young interesting man

c. a man interesting and young d. an interesting man young

1. Daisy had ,
2. a careful look on the picture at the wall
3. a look careful at the picture on the wall

PRACTICE TEST

1. a careful look on the wall at the picture
2. a careful look at the picture on the wall
3. It . Put on the raincoat.

a. heavily is raining outside b. is outside raining heavily

c. is outside raining heavily d. is raining heavily outside

1. My birthday coincides the national holiday.

a. on b. with c. as d. to

. the man and asked him the best way to get \_ b. up to / out of c. on / into d. for / away from

1. Peter went

a. out of / up to

1. conclusion, the company has made a substantial profit its sales.

a. On / of b. At / in c. In / from d. For / with

1. I wish you would never stories like that.

a. make up b. keep away c. put off d. take on

town.

44. What are the main health problems that

45.

46.

a. take on b. put through

His father has two bodyguards

a. keep off b. think up

Since the boy was disruptive, he

a. had expelled b. was expelling

smoking? d. get on

47

c. go with him every hour of the day.

c. watch over d. look for from school.

1. was be expelled d. was expelled a star in the night sky.

b. has often mistaken

1. is often mistaken as of essential proteins

While it is actually a planet, Venus a. often mistakes for c. is often mistaken

1. The process of selecting a variety

complementation, a. calls b. is called c. called d. are called

1. a more beautiful ballet than that one.

a. Never I have seen b. Never have I seen

c. Have I seen never d. Have I never seen

1. that a dangerous stretch of road lay ahead of US.

a. Little we realized b. Little did we realize

c. Did we realize little d. Did we little realize ^

1. Scientists have not been able to cure AIDS, any vaccine against

the disease.

a. nor they have found c. not they have found

1. Christopher asked me \_ a. that I could dance c. if I could dance
2. Barbara asked me

b. nor have they found d. no have they found

b. whether I can dance d. if could I dance \_ her homework that afternoon, a. whether must she do b. that she has to do

c. if she had to do d. if she must do

54. “ ,” the doctor advised his patient.

a. You had better stop drinking b. I would like you to drink

c. You had better to drink d. Please drink some more

protein

1. Computers were not available until the 1950s.
2. commerce b. commercial c. commercially d. commercialize
3. The audience were very by her .
4. impress / performing d. impressing / perform \_ between schools to attract students, b. competition c. competitive d. competitor

a. impressive / performer c. impressed / performance

57. There is now intense

a. compete

1. It was very unfortunate .
2. that the chairman was ill b. if the chairman was ill
3. that the chairman is ill d. the ill chairman
4. was the question asked by the campus authorities.

a. Whose the bike belonged to b. That the bike belongs to

c. Who is the bike belonged d. Which is the bike belong

1. Do you know ?
2. how far the moon is from the earth
3. how far is the moon from the earth
4. that how far the moon is from the earth
5. that how far is the moon from the earth
6. You are the new secretary , aren’t you?

a. started work yesterday b. who started work yesterday

c. whom started work yesterday d. which started work yesterday

1. All of the goals can be accomplished through procedures .

a. whose we have developed c. for that we have developed

1. in which we have developed d. we have developed

spacious and clean, is in the centre of the city.

1. which is d. where is

b. since the show ends

1. after the show will end
2. The Chinese restaurant,

a. is b. that is

1. Will he wait ?

a. before the show will end c. until the show ends

1. Do not leave .

a. no sooner I arrive b. soon I arrive c. before I arrive d. before I will arrive

1. , you know that the moon is pulling the water up.

a. No longer you see high tide b. Until do you see high tide

c. When you will see high tide d. When you see high tide

1. I never want to move out. I shall remain .

a. where I am b. where am I c. what I am

d. what am I the rich do.

1. Poor people have access to basic social services

a. less / than b. less / as c. the least / than d. the least / as

1. Lung cancer is one of

diseases among men.

b. the most common d. many less common

b. more durable than d. most durable as

a. the more common c. many more common

1. Coins are paper notes.

a. more durable as c. most durable than

**PRACTICE '1EsT 207**

1. English wine is good but French wine is .
2. more good b. gooder c. better d. the better
3. If you to my advice when you began the work, you in trouble now.
4. took / were not b. take / are not

c. had taken / would not have been d. had taken / would not be

1. you cross the road carelessly, you may get a traffic accident.

a. If b. Unless c. But for d. If only

1. our good market research, we bankrupt.

a. Unless / will not have gone b. If / will not go

c. Suppose / would not go d. But for / would have gone

1. The dog you if you it.
2. will not attack / was not teasing
3. would not attack / had not teased
4. will not have attacked / did not teased
5. would not have attacked / had not teased
6. the teacher gave him an extra day to do the work he still could not complete it.

a. ự b. Even if c. If only d. As if

1. . I tried my best not to quit my university study.
2. In spite used to be in a financial difficulty
3. Despite I used to be in a financial difficulty
4. Though I used to be in a financial difficulty
5. Even though in a financial difficulty
6. he lives optimistically.

a. Even if his unhappiness b. Unhappy although he is

c. In spite of his unhappiness d. Despite he is unhappy

1. Kathy put on weight she had been eating too much sugar.

a. since b. because of

c. due to d. because the fact that

1. , we lost the game.

a. As the fact that I made a mistake b. Due to my mistake c. Because my mistake d. In case my mistake

1. she persevered steadily she achieved success.

a. Because b. Due to c. Thanks to d. Because of

1. John and Mary are they donate half of their salaries to charity.

a such generous men that b. so generous men that

c. such generous men as d. so generous men as

1. They have they cannot find time for themselves.

a. such many things to do that b. such things for doing that . c. so much things to do that ' d. so many things to do that

1. He read he did not get enough knowledge for the exams.

a. so few books as b. such few books that

c. such a few books as d. so few books that

1. He always pays attention to her every word some sort of goddess.

a. as she was b. as if she were

c. if only she had been d. as though she is

1. She told me not to ask anything but just to do she did.

a. such as b. as of c. as d. as though

1. Anne shrugged her shoulders what happened.

a. as if she had not known b. as though she has not known

c. if she had not known d. as not known

1. We have economized as much as possible a new car.

a. in order to buy b. so as buying

c. so that buying d. in order that will buy

1. He held her tight she would not fall.

a. so that b. in order to c. so as to d. such that

1. The government are encouraging local people to plant more and more trees the land from erosion.

a. so preventing b. in order that prevent

c. so to prevent d. so as to prevent

Error Identification

1. In an effort to solve the problem of extinct, many countries have allocated

A B c

large amounts of land to animal reserves.

D

1. Many national parks and animal reserves charge admission prices to help paving

A B c

the cost of maintaining and they also depend on world organizations for support.

D

1. The word “robot” is used to refer to a wide range of machines, the common

A

feature of that is that they are all capable of movement and can be used to

B c D

perform physical tasks.

1. Everyone sometimes have difficulty in sleeping, but if you miss a couple of

A B c

hours of sleep, no harm is done.

D

1. Oceans, that cover about 70% of the Earth’s surface, contain approximately

A B c

97% of the Earth’s water supply.

D

1. As the result of a recent estimation, about 1 billion people around the world

A B

have some knowledge of English, either as a native language, as a second

c

language, nor as a foreign language.

D

1. The invention of cars makes transportation many easier, but it is cars that

A B

are the greatest contributor of air pollution, c D

PRACTICE TEST 209

1. Ecosystems regulate the climate, determine the composition of the atmosphere,

A B

make new soil, controlling diseases, and provide food, c D

1. National Parks are usually located in places where have been largely undeveloped,

A B

and are often with exceptional native animals, plants, and unusual geological features.

c D

1. Because an insufficient amount of protein in the diet can cause illnesses, it is

A B

imperative that our diet containing an ample amount of the essential proteins.

c D

PRACTICE TEST 12

**Choose a, b, c, or d that is the best alternative.**

1. John economics at Oxford University since he to England

six months ago.

1. is studying / has come b. studies / is coming

c. has been studying / came d. will study / comes

1. When Carol by last night, we our favorite show on television.

a. dropped / were watching b. drops / are watching

c. has dropped / watched d. was dropping / have watched

1. The students by Mr. Pike, but Mr. Pike ill since last week

so this week they by Mrs. Young.

1. are usually being taught / will be / are teaching
2. are usually teaching / is / has been taught
3. have usually been taught / was / are taught
4. are usually taught / has been / are being taught
5. I use that computer for a while?

a. Should b. Needn’t c. Won’t d. May

1. Plants have sunlight in order to survive.

a. must b. should c. mustn’t d. will

1. It is late. It is time we home.

a. needn’t go b. should go c. must have gone d. ought to have gone

1. Mary regrets the money to Nick because he has never paid the

money he borrows.

a. lend b. to lend c. lending d. lent

1. It is hot. We feel like something cool.

a. drink b. to drink ' c. drinking d. drunk

1. Susan refused . She hated being kept .

a. wait / waited b. to wait / waiting

c. waiting / to wait d. waited / wait

1. They visited many stores; , they could not find what they were looking for.

a. but b. however c. and d. moreover

c. and

telephone number? c. so

1. He works slowly and precisely and makes mistakes.
2. so b. or
3. Do you know his address
4. yet b. but
5. Most women have to do

his workmate tends to rush things d. whereas d. or

a a lot of housework b. many houseworks c. a few housework d. some houseworks

1. We need for the cake.
2. a few sugars c. some more sugar d. many sugars petrol in the tank, so we’ll have to stop at a petrol

a. any sugar 15. There is not

station on the way.

1. a number of b. many c. enough d. some
2. sugar do you often take in your coffee? -Two teaspoons.

a. How many b. How much c. What d. What about

1. lasers be used to treat cancers?

a. Do b. Can c. Have d. Were

1. The World Wildlife Fund supplies aid to protect forests, ?

a. do they b. has it c. won’t they d. doesn’t it

1. Either Tom or I the meeting.

a are going to lead b. leads c. is leading d. am leading

1. Neither the basket nor the apples on the table.

a. are b. is c. was d

has been two hundred.

d. is

1. Valentine’s Day / Sweethearts Day d. Valentine Day / Sweethearts\* Day
2. In last conference the number of attendees

a. was b. were c. are

1. In Turkey, is called .

a. Valentine Day / Sweethearts Day c. Valentine’s Day / Sweethearts’ Day

1. Nowadays, most students wear

a. school’s uniform b. schools’ uniform

1. We needn’t take a taxi. It is just a \_ a. ten-minute walk c. ten minutes’ walk
2. school uniform d. uniform schools\*
3. ten minute’s walk
4. ten minutes walk
5. By the time Mary saw the job advertised, it was already too late for her to apply.
6. It was the advertisement that helped Mary got the job.
7. Seeing the job advertised too late, so Mary could not apply for it.
8. Although Mary was the job advertised late, she managed to apply for it.
9. In spite of seeing the job advertised late, Mary succeeded in getting it.
10. He is tall enough to change the bulb without getting on a chair.
11. Whenever he changes the bulb he needs a chair.
12. He is tall but he cannot change the bulb without getting on a chair.
13. He is so tall that he can change the bulb without getting on a chair.
14. He often gets on a chair, and then changes the bulb.
15. If only 1 had not come to that awful party.
16. I wish I had not come to that awful party.
17. I knew that the party would be awful, so I did not come.

PRACTICE TEST 211

1. Although the party was awful, I do not regret coming.
2. I do not regret coming, whether the party was awful or not.
3. The director’s wife did not come but the director did and brought

with him little girl.

a. he / himself b. his / he c. himself / his d. he / his

1. - Did you draw this picture?

- No, a friend of in New York did .

a. me / them b. I / him c. my / you

30.

d. mine / it

Peter and Mary that often help US with gardening.

31

32.

a. We are When I was at

a. 0 / 0 At

b. She is

c. He is

d. It is

Cambridge University, I study

b. the / the c. the / a d. 0 / the

beginning of the twentieth century, Los Angeles became .

Physics.

popular immigrant destination, a. the / a b. 0 / the c. 0 / 0

33. amazing thing happened to me yesterday.

me for his girlfriend.

a. The / An b. An / A c. A / The

d. an / the man mistook

d. The / 0

34.

were rescued by the firemen.

1. As the earthquake’s last three men
2. The earthquake with the last three victims
3. Being the last three victims of the earthquake
4. The last three victims of the earthquake

, he could not go to school on that day.

a. Ill b. To be ill c. As being ill d. Being ill

, she ran into the room.

a. Frighten, hear the news b. Hearing a noise, after frightened

c. She frightened, hearing a noise d. Frightened, after hearing a noise

The government is very worried about the increase of .

a. the youth unemployment rate b. the unemployment youth rate

c. the rate youth unemployment d. the youth rate unemployment

38. Chopin, , died at Place Vendome.

a. a composer worldwide famous b. a composer famous worldwide

35.

36.

37,

c. a worldwide famous composer

1. He all that on his own.

a. possibly cannot have drunk

c. cannot possibly have drunk

1. My favorite place to be

with a scary movie TV.

a. in / in / from b. at / at / on

1. We have seen many increases

a. at b. in

1. Peter likes taking photographs \_

a. through b. of

1. The burglars

a. made off b

d. a famous worldwide composer

b. cannot have possibly drunk d. cannot have drunk possibly midnight on Halloween is

c. for / on / in d.

production levels.

c. through d.

the mountains.

d.

c. from \_ before the police arrived, took out c. went through

home

on / over / at

upon

d. ran in

as a laboratory assistant.

b. kept away c. hung over d. put off

automatically as soon as smoke is detected.

b. get on c. turn over d. go off

1. She was

a. taken on

1. The alarm will a. knock down
2. The volunteers planted these trees in the park last week.
3. These trees were planted by the volunteers in the park last week.
4. These trees were planted in the park by the volunteers last week.
5. These trees were planted in the park last week by the volunteers.
6. The park was planted these trees by the volunteers last week.
7. Bowling by the Dutch who colonized the New World in the 1600’s.

a. has been introduced b. was introduced

c. had been introduced d. introduced

1. The reason why the millionaire committed suicide so far.

a. had not be known c. has not known

1. anything stranger.

a. Has he seldom seen

c. Seldom has he seen

1. No sooner dinner than

a. she had finished / she went c. had she finished / she went

1. the problem.

b. had not known d. has not been known

b. Has he seen seldom d. Seldom he has seen \_ for a walk.

b. she had finished / did she go d. had she finished / did she go

52.

a. Did I understand only then c. Only then did I understand

b. I understood only then d. Only then I understood the mother warned her sons.

b. Boys, you will not go near the lake d. Boys, you would like to go near the lake

a. Boys, don’t go near the lake c. Boys, let’s go near the lake 53. John him my phone number.

b. suggested me giving d. told me to give the hotel for reservation, a. mề to phone and writing b. to phone and write me

c. me both phoning and writing d. me either to phone or to write

55. Frequent practice you to get in learning a language.

a. invited me to give  
c. said to me to give  
54. They have ever advised

a. enables / achievement c. abilities / achieving

56. John did not want to be so

a. fright b. frighten

1. able / achieve

d. disabilities / achievable but he could not help it.

1. frightened d. frightening
2. Her doctor advised her to do jogging because she is .

a. weighed b. weightless c. weightlessness d. overweight

1. He told me at the scene of the accident.

a. what had he seen c. that what he had seen 59. Is it true ?

b. what he had seen d. whether what had he seen

a. that will all movies be available online

PRACTICE TEST 218

1. that all movies will be available online
2. if all movies will be available online
3. if will all movies be available online
4. is none of your business.

a. What we are doing b. What are we doing

c. We are doing what d. That what we are doing

1. Professor Chan gave the student the book last year.

a. writing b. he wrote c. wrote d. whose he wrote

1. A man shouted angrily.

a. mobile was stolen • b. whom mobile was stolen

c. that mobile was stolen d. whose mobile was stolen

1. Let’s go the Oxford Street, there are plenty of fashion shops.

a. that b. which c. where d. on that

1. David rushed to the scene he heard the news.

a. soon b. as soon as c. while d. until

1. I have not contacted Jacky for London.

a. since he left b. as he will leave c. till he leaves d. no longer he leaves

1. Some students left the room .

a. before the class was over b. after the class would be over

c. the class was over d. while the class is being over

1. I am always meeting her .

a. at where do I least expect her b. at where I least expect her

c. where do I least expect her d. where I least expect her

1. an object from the surface of the Earth, it weighs.

a. The farer / the more little b. The furthest / the least

c. Further / less d. The further / the less

1. You are I think you are.

a. not so clever as b. so clever as c. more clever as d. as clever more

1. He is man I have ever met.

a the most modest b. most modest c. more modest d. modest

1. There were last weekend.

a. as twice much visitors as usual b. as twice many visitors than usual

c. twice as many visitors as usual d. twice as much visitors than usual

1. If it an hour ago, the streets wet now.

a. were raining / will be b. had rained / would be

c. rained / would be d. had rained / would have been

1. I will lend you the dictionary you will return it tomorrow.

a. provided that b. unless c. without d. but for

1. her support, we these things.

a. Suppose / will not achieve b. Providing that / would not achieve

c. Without / would not have achieved d. If / would not have achieved

1. Lucy her foot if she had not dropped the old box.

a. did not hurt b. would not hurt

c. would not have hurt d. will not have hurt

1. , we could not clearly understand him.

a. As he spoke rapidly b. Because he rapid speech

c. Because of he spoke rapidly d. Due to he spoke rapidly

1. he made an excellent speech in defense of his friend, everyone

admired and respected him.

a. Because of b. Due to c. Thanks to d. Since

1. , he has to be very careful about what he eats.

a. As his diabetes b. Since the fact that he has diabetes

c. Due to he has diabetes d. Because he has diabetes

1. the dolphin lives in the sea, it is not a fish; it is a mammal.

a. As b. As if c. As though d. Although

1. , he seldom helps the poor.

a. Even though his wealth b. Although he is wealthy

c. Even if his wealth d. Despite he is wealthy

1. , she got married to that disabled man.

a. In spite of her parents’ disapproval b. In spite her parents’ disapproval c. Despite her parents disapproved d. Even if her parents’ disapproval

1. The particles are they burn up before they reach earth.

a. so small that b. such small that c. so too small that d. too small that

1. This meteor shower is it only comes every 33 years.

a. such a rare occurrence that c. such very a rare occurrence that

b. so a rare occurrence that d. very a rare occurrence that the scientists will be studying

1. These observations will reveal results for years.

a. so important information as c. such important information that

b. such important information as d. so important information that \_ the structure, b. so as strengthening d. so as they strengthen \_ well at school, b. so as doing d. in order they do

1. The poles are joined together

a. so that strengthen

c. so as to strengthen

1. Children need to feel secure

a. in order that doing

c. in order to do

1. She asked the receptionist to make an arrangement the dentist

the next morning.

a. in order meeting b. so as to she could meet

c. so that meeting d. so that she could meet

1. Things have happened in the same ways .

a. as to expect b. as expecting

c. as though we have ever expected d. as we have ever expected

1. She is a secretary but she often talked to us the boss.

a. if only she were b. as though she is

c. as though she were d. if as she were

1. John often behaves formally friends.

a. as if we were not b. as if we not to be

c. as though we did not d. as long as we were not

PRACTICE TEST 215

**Error Identification**

1. Today, women are protected by the Sex Discrimination Act; but, inequality

A B c D

still persists.

1. UNESCO has international cooperation agreements to secure the world’s

A B c

cultural and natural heritage and preserving human rights.

D

1. Education is recognized as an essential need for achieving equal in most

A B c D

walks of life.

1. The World Health Organization (WHO) is a specialized agency of the United

A B

Nations, that acts as a coordinating authority on international public health.

c D

1. Do you know that reading can keep your mind acted and engaged well when

A B c D

you get old?

1. Future is a time when most people assume that everything will keep getting

A B c

better and future generations will enjoy life in a more better world.

D

1. Qualifications and experience are two the most important factors that help

A B c D

you get a good job.

1. Public universities, private universities, arts colleges, and community colleges

A

all has a significant role in higher education in the United States.

B c D

1. Studying abroad can be a meaningful and rewarding experience, which

A B c

gives students the chance to live overseas, integrating themselves into a

D

totally foreign culture, meet other students, and travel.

1. Affecting by the Western cultures, Vietnamese young people’s attitudes

A B c

towards love and marriage have dramatically changed.

, D